This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

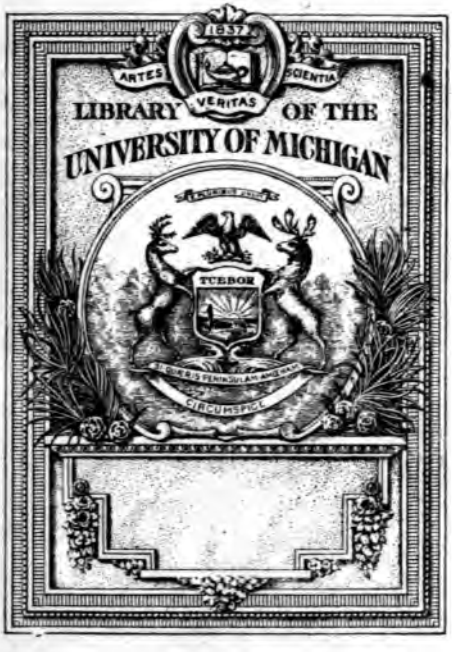
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

443973

THE CANTONMENT MANUAL

BY
MAJOR W. G. KILNER
AND
LIEUTENANT A. J. MacELROY


1837
ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
TUEBOR
CIRCUMSPICE

113
.IT48

THE CANTONMENT MANUAL

The
CANTONMENT MANUAL

OR

Facts for Every Soldier

By

MAJOR W. G. KILNER, U. S. ARMY
(WEST POINT)

and

1st Lieut. A. J. MacELROY, U. S. ARMY
(CORNELL)

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
NEW YORK · LONDON
1917

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

Printed in the United States of America

THIS MANUAL IS DEDICATED TO

WOODROW WILSON

COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE UNITED STATES ARMY

INSPIRER AND LEADER OF WORLD DEMOCRACY

316934

PRESIDENT WILSON TO THE NATIONAL ARMY

THE WHITE HOUSE,
WASHINGTON.

TO THE SOLDIERS OF THE NATIONAL ARMY:

You are undertaking a great duty. The heart of the whole country is with you.

Everything that you do will be watched with the deepest interest and with the deepest solicitude not only by those who are near and dear to you, but by the whole nation besides.

For this great war draws us all together, makes us all comrades and brothers, as all true Americans felt themselves to be when we first made good our national independence.

The eyes of the world will be upon you, because you are in some special sense the soldiers of freedom.

Let it be your pride, therefore, to show all men everywhere not only what good soldiers you are, but also what good men you are, keeping yourselves fit and straight in everything and pure and clean through and through.

Let us set for ourselves a standard so high that it will be a glory to live up to it, and then let us live up to it and add a new laurel to the crown of America.

My affectionate confidence goes with you in every battle and every test.

God keep and guide you!

WOODROW WILSON.

FOREWORD

First impressions are lasting. Nowhere is this more true than in the military service. The impressions upon the recruit, be they good or bad, made during the first few weeks, stick to him all through his military life.

The authors of this manual hope that they have made this book so simple and clear that any man who enters the army can, by mastering its contents, lay the foundation for a successful career as a soldier. They also trust that such facts and advice have been included as will inspire every man entering the service to become a better man and a soldier who, by his words, actions and devotion to duty, will do his part to uphold the glorious reputation of the Army of the United States.

This book in the hands of the pupils at schools where military drill is taught should prove a most valuable aid.

W. G. K.
A. J. M.

Mineola, N. Y.
Aug. 25, 1917.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	CHARACTERISTICS OF A GOOD SOLDIER	1
II.	HELPFUL HINTS FOR RECRUITS	4
	Simple rules for cantonment life	6
	When on a march or hike	7
	Ten "be's" that will beat the Kaiser	8
III.	SETTING-UP EXERCISES	9
	Purpose	9
	Arm exercises	9
	Leg exercises	10
	Body exercises	10
IV.	INFANTRY DRILL	12
	Introduction	12
	General rules for drills and formations	14
	Orders and commands	19
	Orders	20
	Commands	21
	School of the soldier	22
	Position of the soldier at attention	23
	The rests	23
	Eyes right or left	24
	Facings	24
	Salute with the hand	25
	Steps and marchings	25
	Quick time	26
	To mark time	27
	The half step	27
	Side step	27
	Back step	27
	To halt	28
	To march	28

CHAPTER		PAGE
	To march to the rear	28
	Change step	28
	Manual of arms	29
	Rifle salute	35
	The bayonet	36
	The inspection	37
	To dismiss the squad	38
V.	School of the Squad	38
	To form the squad	40
	Alignments	40
	To take intervals and distances	41
	To stack and take arms	44
	The oblique march	46
	To turn on moving pivot	46
	To turn on fixed pivot	48
	To follow the corporal	50
	To deploy as skirmishers	51
	To increase or diminish intervals	52
	The assembly	52
	Kneeling and lying down	52
	Loadings and firings	53
	To load	54
	To unload	56
	To set the sight	56
	To fire by volley	56
	To fire at will	57
	To fire by clip	58
	To suspend firing	58
	To cease firing	58
	The use of cover	59
	Observation	60
VI.	School of the Company	61
	Close order, rules	65
	To form the company	66
	To dismiss the company	67
	Alignments	67
	Movements on the fixed pivot	68
	Movements on the moving pivot	73

CHAPTER PAGE

Facing or marching to the rear..... 74
On right (left) into line..... 76
Front into line..... 76
At ease and route step..... 78
To diminish the front of a column of squads 79
Extended order, rules for deployment..... 81
Deployments 82
The assembly 85
The advance 85
The fire attack..... 90
The company in support..... 92
The company acting alone..... 93
Fire 93
Ranges 94
Classes of firing..... 95
The target 95
Fire directions 96
Fire control 97
Fire discipline 98

VII. Inspections and Muster..... 100
Company inspection 100
Company muster 104

VIII. Honors and Salutes..... 106

IX. The Color 100
The color guard..... 110
To receive the color..... 112
Manual of the color..... 112

X. Tent Pitching 114
Shelter tents 114
Single sleeping bag..... 116
Double sleeping bag..... 116
To strike shelter tents..... 116
To pitch tents..... 117
Conical wall tents..... 118

CHAPTER PAGE

To strike common, wall, pyramidal, and conical wall tents 118
To fold tents 119
Method of folding pyramidal tent 119

XI. Signals and Signaling 122
Arm signals 122
Signals and codes 129
The more important conventional flag signals 130
Two-arm semaphore code 131, 132

XII. Interior Guard Duty 133
Sergeant of the guard 133
Corporal of the guard 137
Privates of the guard 144
Orders for sentinels 144
Regulations relating to the general orders for sentinels 145
Special orders for sentinels at the post of the guard 153
Countersigns and paroles 155
Guarding prisoners 157
Guard mounting 158
Formal guard mounting for infantry 158
Informal guard mounting for infantry 164
Relieving the old guard 165

XIII. Target Practice 169
Preliminary training in marksmanship 169
Sight adjustments 169
Table of sight corrections 171
Aiming 172
Battle sight 173
Trigger squeeze 174
Firing positions 175
Calling the shot 177
Coördination 178
Advice to riflemen 178
The course in small-arms firing 181
Targets 181, 182, 183

CHAPTER PAGE

XIV. Care of Clothing, Equipment and Rifle..... 184
Clothing 184
Shoes 185
Cloth equipment 186
Mess kit 186
The rifle 187
The parts of the rifle..... 187, 188
Pointers 189

XV. The Soldier's Health..... 190
A few health hints..... 192
Venereal diseases 192

XVI. Sanitation and Cleanliness in Camp..... 193

XVII. Articles of War..... 194
Certain articles to be read and explained to enlisted men 194
Desertion: absence without leave..... 198
Disrespect: insubordination; mutiny..... 199
Arrest: confinement 200
War offenses 203
Miscellaneous crimes and offenses..... 205
Miscellaneous provisions 210

XVIII. Court-Martial and Punishment..... 214
Maximum and minimum punishments..... 215

XIX. First-Aid Suggestions 216
Wounds and cuts 216
Broken bone 218
Fainting or exhaustion..... 219
Sunstroke 219
Freezing and frostbite..... 220
Schaefer method of restoring the apparently drowned 220
Hints for treating wounds..... 223

CHAPTER PAGE

XX. EASY ROAD TO FRENCH 225
Pronunciation 225
Articles—definite and indefinite 226
Pronouns 227
Plurals 228
Questions 228
Adjectives 229
Adverbs 229
Disjunctive personal pronouns 229
Learn these by heart 230
Common phrases 232
Requests, etc. 233
Food, drink, smoke 234
Correspondence, telegraph, etc. 235
Dress and toilet 235
Utensils 236
Directions and places 237
On the road—*sur la route* 238
English-French vocabulary 241
Common words 241
Numerals 243
Currency, measures, weights 245
Days, months, seasons 246
Familiar phrases 247
Military titles, ranks, and grades 249
Military terms 250
Uniform, arms, clothing, and equipment 252
Questions about the road 254
Towns 256
Railroads 257
Rations and food 258
Hospitals 259
Points of the compass 260
Trench warfare 260
Words of command—
Commandements 262
Summons to surrender (in German) 263
Conjugation 263
Regular verbs 263
Auxiliary verbs 265

CHAPTER PAGE
Compound tenses 266
Formations of tenses..... 268
Important irregular verbs..... 268
APPENDIX 274
Definitions 274
Slang in the army..... 276
Form of a military letter..... 277
Form for last will and testament..... 278
Infantry division (make-up under war conditions).. 280
Military badges or service ribbons..... 281
Military mail 282
Cantonments and mobilization camps..... 283
National guard camps 284
National army cantonments..... 285
Army insignia 286
Hat cords 289
Bugle calls 291

CHAPTER PAGE

XX. EASY ROAD TO FRENCH 225
Pronunciation 225
Articles—definite and indefinite 226
Pronouns 227
Plurals 228
Questions 228
Adjectives 229
Adverbs 229
Disjunctive personal pronouns 229
Learn these by heart 230
Common phrases 232
Requests, etc. 233
Food, drink, smoke 234
Correspondence, telegraph, etc. 235
Dress and toilet 235
Utensils 236
Directions and places 237
On the road—*sur la route* 238
English-French vocabulary 241
Common words 241
Numerals 243
Currency, measures, weights 245
Days, months, seasons 246
Familiar phrases 247
Military titles, ranks, and grades 249
Military terms 250
Uniform, arms, clothing, and equipment 252
Questions about the road 254
Towns 256
Railroads 257
Rations and food 258
Hospitals 259
Points of the compass 260
Trench warfare 260
Words of command—
Commandements 262
Summons to surrender (in German) 263
Conjugation 263
Regular verbs 263
Auxiliary verbs 265

THE CANTONMENT MANUAL

CHAPTER I

CHARACTERISTICS OF A GOOD SOLDIER

Making good as a soldier is not unlike making good in civil life. The main characteristics you must possess to become a good soldier are: obedience, courage, determination, initiative, alertness, cleanliness, cheerfulness, comradeship, courtesy, ambition, team work, and loyalty.

Obedience means to obey at once all orders of your commissioned and noncommissioned officers. Do what you are told promptly and cheerfully and you will avoid getting into trouble. Remember that a good soldier will obey first and then if he feels himself aggrieved he will afterward complain to the proper authority.

Courage means not only to face danger without flinching when performing your duty but to be willing to right any wrong that you have intentionally or otherwise done to another. Bear in mind that courage is most infectious. A brave soldier has often turned defeat into victory by an act of bravery that has infected his comrades. If you know what to do in an emergency so that you will not be surprised you will have done much to put the thought of danger out of your mind. Self-confidence in a soldier is the one thing that will eliminate fear and keep his courage at its height.

Determination and bulldog stick-to-it-iveness to win at all hazards are the greatest contributing factors to suc-

cess in battle. While in training do all in your power to develop and strengthen your determination. Keep everlastingly at the most difficult tasks and never give up until you have mastered them.

Initiative is using your common sense as to what to do when no specific order is given. In the U. S. Army every man from the newest recruit to the most seasoned general is expected to use his head. It is better to make a mistake than to remain inactive in any emergency. Action counts. Do something even if it is wrong rather than "lay down."

Alertness. A good soldier may be pardoned for failure but never for being surprised. You should always be on your guard. Should the unexpected happen use your head and by always being on the alert you will never be taken entirely by surprise.

Cleanliness. Self-respect demands that every soldier keep his person and clothing clean. Your health and therefore your efficiency depend upon your keeping yourself clean. A clean, neat soldier ninety-nine times out of a hundred is a good soldier.

Cheerfulness. Nothing contributes to the success of a man in the military game so much as a cheerful disposition. Upon this depends courage and practically all the attributes of an efficient soldier. It's a mighty contagious thing and makes life worth while.

"It's easy enough to be pleasant when life goes along like a song,
But the man worth while is the man with a smile when everything goes dead wrong."

Comradeship. What a world of meaning in the word comrade! A comrade is far more than a friend. Comrade in arms means that men are willing, if need be, to die

fighting shoulder to shoulder and to live arm in arm. Let every man in the squad, let every man in the company be a comrade to every other man in that group. Little differences will arise, but men of the good old U. S. Army are made of that stuff which fights through thick and thin for their glorious country and as comrades glad to lay down their lives for each other. Therefore let the spirit of comradeship be ever present in your midst.

Courtesy. Military courtesy is one of the most beautiful and essential features of the life of a soldier. As in civil life courtesy is the mark of a well bred man, so in military life military courtesy is the sure sign of a well disciplined and efficient soldier. In the Army Regulations we read: "Courtesy among military men is indispensable to discipline; respect to superiors will not be confined to obedience on duty, but will be extended on all occasions."

Ambition is a desire and a will to succeed in any undertaking. The young soldier should be ambitious to do his duty so well that he will merit promotion.

Team work means that each man in the squad, platoon or company contributes all in his power to make for the success of the whole unit. Success in battle depends on team work just as much as success in a football game depends upon the coöperation and pull-together spirit of the football team. You might perform a brilliant, brave deed and yet this might contribute to defeat because your special part in the team work of the company was neglected.

Loyalty means that you must stand by your company through thick and thin. Boost your organization at every opportunity. Be loyal and true to your officers, your noncommissioned officers [illegible]es. In this way you w[illegible]ry.

CHAPTER II

HELPFUL HINTS FOR RECRUITS

1. An officer wears a gold and black hat cord and has a brown braid on the sleeve of his blouse.

2. Salute all officers whom you meet.

3. If seated and an officer approaches arise, stand at attention, and salute when he gets within saluting distance, which is about six paces.

4. If an officer enters the mess hall the men stop eating until he leaves.

5. If you are working you do not salute unless the officer speaks to you.

6. Foreign officers should be saluted the same as your own officers.

7. Before addressing an officer always salute and salute before leaving him.

8. When walking with an officer keep on his left and one pace to his rear.

9. When you are with an officer and he salutes another person you do not salute.

10. When an officer enters a room or a tent where there are several soldiers the first to perceive him calls out "Attention": the men all stand at attention while the officer is in the room or tent or until he directs otherwise.

11. When the "Star Spangled Banner" is played stand at attention, face the music and come to the salute at the first note and drop the hand at the last note. When To the Colors is sounded face the flag, come to the salute at the first note and drop the hand at the last note.

12. Prisoners do not salute but stand at attention when being addressed by an officer.

13. Always hold the hand at the salute until the salute is returned by the officer.

14. Before speaking to any of your company officers always secure the permission of the first sergeant unless one of the officers speaks to you.

15. In addressing an officer the form should be "The major is wanted on the phone." "Did the captain call Private Jones?" "Private Smith reports to the lieutenant." When given an order by an officer you should say, "Yes, sir."

16. When entering the office or tent of an officer you should knock once, even though the door be open. When requested, enter the room and stand near the door until you are spoken to. Then advance, salute and tell your business. After you have finished your business, salute, make a proper about-face and depart.

17. Always take off your hat upon entering a room or tent where officers are present.

18. Never wear sleeve holders. Always have leggins and breeches properly laced.

19. Keep your uniform clean and your shoes polished.

20. Don't let yourself become careless. Always bathe frequently and keep clean.

21. Always have your mail addressed care of Company and Regiment, as: "Pvt. William Baylis, Co. A, 119th Regiment."

22. The custom of the service is that an experienced soldier will explain things to a new man. Therefore, don't get embarrassed but ask questions freely about your new duties and surroundings.

23. As soon as you are assigned to a Company, report to the first sergeant of that Company.

24. You are responsible for all property given to you.

25. If you lose a blanket, or anything else, the cost will be taken out of your monthly pay.

26. Never wear any civilian clothes with any part of your uniform.

Simple Rules for Cantonment Life

1. Jump out of your bunk at the first note of first call and dress quickly.

2. Get out as soon as dressed and not later than at the first note of assembly for reveille.

3. Be ready to step into your place in ranks as soon as the first sergeant commands "Fall in," and stand at "Attention" until directed to do otherwise.

4. After reveille make up your bunk and have everything arranged as prescribed by your company commander.

5. Wash before every meal.

6. Go to the toilet or latrine right after breakfast.

7. Prepare your equipment needed for drill.

8. If you are sick and need medical attention, give your name to the first sergeant at reveille.

9. As soon as first call for drill sounds put on your equipment and go to your place in ranks.

10. After drill, clean your rifle.

11. After noon mess there is usually a little time for rest. Lie down and be quiet, if but for a short time.

12. After the drill in the afternoon there is usually a short time before evening parade or ceremony of retreat. This is a good time to bathe, shave, change your uniform, shine your shoes, etc. Strive to be the neatest man in your company.

13. Evening mess follows retreat.

14. After supper you will have plenty of time to write letters and read. In the Y. M. C. A. and Knights of Columbus rooms you will find writing paper and reading matter.

15. Don't forget to read your Bible.

16. Write home at least once a week.

17. Be in your bunk when taps sounds. If you are not sleepy keep quiet out of consideration for your fellows.

18. Look at the company bulletin board frequently. Here you will find:

The list of calls.

Details for guard, etc.

Special orders and instructions.

19. Rumors are always afloat wherever there are soldiers. *Don't act on rumors.* Your orders will be given to you by your company officers and noncommissioned officers. The company bulletin board will furnish you with all other details and information about your duties.

20. Don't pattern your conduct after the braggart and bully. In military as in civil life, it is the quiet, orderly and industrious fellow who gets ahead.

21. Keep your temper and "do unto others as ye would that they should do unto you."

When on a March or Hike

1. Don't smoke.

2. Don't drink frequently from your canteen. Merely rinse your mouth and spit the water out until the hike is finished.

3. Loosen and adjust your equipment at every halt

4. Don't leave the ranks witho

5. Relieve yourself at the

6. Lie down and relax at every halt.

7. Keep in your place forty inches behind the man in front of you.

8. When on "route step," join your comrades in singing and whistling. Do your part in helping to make everybody happy.

9. "Fall in" at once when the signal is given after a halt.

10. Don't make remarks about people you pass on the road.

Ten "Be's" That Will Beat the Kaiser

1. Be clean.
2. Be properly clothed.
3. Be sure to eat nourishing food.
4. Be sure to sleep with lots of fresh air.
5. Be sure to get plenty of exercise daily.
6. Be sure to sleep eight hours every night, if possible.
7. Be sure to defecate daily.
8. Be ever busy, either with work or fun.
9. Be happy and look on the bright side of life.
10. Be ready with a smile to tackle any task set for you.

CHAPTER III

SETTING-UP EXERCISES

Purpose

As the name indicates, these exercises are for the purpose of giving the soldier the proper bearing or to "set him up." To this may be added that nothing so conduces to good health as judiciously and regularly going through these exercises. A few of the best and simplest exercises are here given so that the young soldier may daily take these exercises by himself if necessary. Go through these as soon as you get up and just before going to bed and you will be surprised at the improvement in your bodily vigor and health.

Arm Exercises

I. Extend arms to side. (a) Open and close fists as rapidly as possible. (b) With arms extended, move arms up and down about ten inches as rapidly as possible.

II. Extend arms to *front, overhead,* bend forward, knees stiff, until fingers *touch toes, arms to front.* Repeat by numbers (1) (2) (3).

III. Extend *arms to side.* (a) Swing arms, crossing each other in front of body, keeping arms stiff, making a complete circle at each count. Repeat by numbers (1) (2) (3) (4). (b) Swing arms backward, arms extended, describing small circles. The same, swinging

arms forward. (c) With body as a pivot, swing left arm down to side, right arm overhead, and the reverse, keeping the arms stiff and bending the body to side from the waist. (d) Clench fists and bend the right arm until fist touches shoulder, then extend right arm and bend left until fist touches shoulder. Repeat on two counts (1) (2).

Leg Exercises

IV. Hands on hips, fingers to the front. (a) Bend knees until hips touch heels. Up to standing position. Repeat by numbers (1) (2). (b) Bend left leg at knee until lower left leg is horizontal. In this position, bend right leg until left knee reaches point three inches above ground. On two counts. Same with right leg on two counts.

V. Hop to side straddle position. Extend the arms overhead, at the same time throwing the feet apart. Bring the arms to the sides and at the same time bring feet together. Repeat by numbers (1) (2). (This is one of the most popular army exercises.)

VI. Hands on hips as in IV. Alternately raise the left and the right leg until the knee is nearly as high as the shoulder. Repeat by numbers (1) (2) (3) (4).

Body Exercises

VII. Hands on hips as in IV. (a) Bend body forward and then backward (1) (2). (b) Bend to the left and then to the right (1) (2). (c) Hop to side straddle position, circle, using the hips as a pivot, first to the left and then to the right. Repeat by numbers (1) (2).

VIII. Lie flat on the back with hands under the head. Raise the legs, using the hips as a pivot, very slowly, keeping the knees stiff, until the feet are over the hips, then very slowly back to the ground. Repeat.

IX. Bend knees, palms of hands on ground between feet, carry feet backward until the body rests on toes and hands, body straight. Bend arms downward until body nearly touches ground, always keeping the back stiff, not arched. Repeat. To come to attention bring feet up to hands and then spring up to attention.

X. Cock Fight.—With arms folded and one foot raised from the ground, two men try by bumping each other to cause the other to put both feet on the ground, which counts a point for the opponent. This exercise can be worked into a good healthy competition in a squad or company.

Note.—If these exercises are used by an instructor he should explain and illustrate the various exercises. From the position of attention they should be given by numbers.

CHAPTER IV[1]

INFANTRY DRILL

Introduction

1. Success in battle is the ultimate object of all military training; success may be looked for only when the training is intelligent and thorough.

2. Commanding officers are accountable for the proper training of their respective organizations within the limits prescribed by regulations and orders.

The excellence of an organization is judged by its field efficiency. The field efficiency of an organization depends primarily upon its effectiveness as a whole. Thoroughness and uniformity in the training of the units of an organization are indispensable to the efficiency of the whole; it is by such means alone that the requisite team work may be developed.

3. Simple movements and elastic formations are essential to correct training for battle.

4. The Drill Regulations are furnished as a guide. They provide the principles for training and for increasing the probability of success in battle.

In the interpretation of the regulations, the spirit must be sought. Quibbling over the minutiæ of form is indicative of failure to grasp the spirit.

---

[1] This chapter on Infantry Drill is taken from the Infantry Drill Regulations U. S. Army, to which the authors have added certain explanations and drawings.

5. The principles of combat are considered in Part II of these regulations. They are treated in the various schools included in Part I only to the extent necessary to indicate the functions of the various commanders and the division of responsibility between them. The amplification necessary to a proper understanding of their application is to be sought in Part II.

6. The following important distinctions must be observed:

(*a*) Drills executed at *attention* and the ceremonies are *disciplinary exercises* designed to teach precise and soldierly movement, and to inculcate that prompt and subconscious obedience which is essential to proper military control. To this end, smartness and precision should be exacted in the execution of every detail. Such drills should be frequent, but short.

(*b*) The purpose of *extended order drill* is to teach the *mechanism* of deployment, of the firings, and, in general, of the employment of troops in combat. Such drills are in the nature of disciplinary exercises and should be frequent, thorough, and exact in order to habituate men to the firm control of their leaders. Extended order drill is executed *at ease*. The company is the largest unit which executes extended order drill.

(*c*) *Field exercises* are for instruction in the duties incident to campaign. Assumed situations are employed. Each exercise should conclude with a discussion, on the ground, of the exercise and principles involved.

(*d*) The *combat exercise, a form of field exercise* of the company, battalion, and larger units, consists of the *application of tactical principles* to assumed situations, employing in the execution the appropriate formations and movements of close and extended order.

combat simulate, as far as possible, the

battle conditions assumed. In order to familiarize both officers and men with such conditions, companies and battalions will frequently be consolidated to provide war-strength organizations. Officers and noncommissioned officers not required to complete the full quota of the units participating are assigned as observers or umpires.

The firing line can rarely be controlled by the voice alone; thorough training to insure the proper use of prescribed signals is necessary.

The exercise should be followed by a brief drill at attention in order to restore smartness and control.

7. In field exercises the enemy is said to be *imaginary* when his position and force are merely assumed; *outlined* when his position and force are indicated by a few men; *represented* when a body of troops acts as such.

General Rules for Drills and Formations

8. When the *preparatory* command consists of more than one part, its elements are arranged as follows:

(1) For movements to be executed successively by the subdivisions or elements of an organization: (*a*) Description of the movement; (*b*) how executed, or on what element executed.

(2) For movements to be executed simultaneously by the subdivisions of an organization: (*a*) The designation of the subdivisions; (*b*) the movement to be executed.

9. Movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank, it being necessary to substitute the word "left" for "right," and the reverse, to have the explanation of the corresponding movement

toward the other flank. The commands are given for the execution of the movements toward either flank. The substitute word of the command is placed within parentheses.

10. Any movement may be executed either from the halt or when marching, unless otherwise prescribed. If at a halt, the command for movements involving marching need not be prefaced by *forward,* as 1. *Column right (left),* 2. *MARCH.*

11. Any movement not specially excepted may be executed in double time.

If at a halt, or if marching in quick time, the command *double time* precedes the command of execution.

12. In successive movements executed in double time the leading or base unit marches in *quick time* when not otherwise prescribed; the other units march in *double time* to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit. If marching in double time, the command *double time* is omitted. The leading or base unit marches in *quick time;* the other units continue at double time to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

13. To hasten the execution of a movement begun in quick time, the command: 1. *Double time,* 2. *MARCH,* is given. The leading or base unit continues to march in quick time, or remains at halt if already halted; the other units complete the execution of the movement in double time and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

14. To stay the execution of a movement when marching, for the correction of errors, the command: 1. *In place,* 2. *HALT,* is given. All halt and stand fast, without changing the position of the pieces. To resume the

movement, the command: 1. *Resume,* 2. *MARCH,* is given.

15. To revoke a preparatory command, or, being at a halt, to begin anew a movement improperly begun, the command, *AS YOU WERE,* is given, at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

16. Unless otherwise announced, the guide of a company or subdivision of a company in line is *right;* of a battalion in line or line of subdivisions or of a deployed line, *center;* of a rank in column of squads, toward the side of the guide of the company.

To march with guide other than as prescribed above, or to change the guide: *Guide* (*right, left,* or *center*).

In successive formations into line, the guide is toward the point of rest; in platoons or larger subdivisions it is so announced.

The announcement of the guide, when given in connection with a movement, follows the command of execution for that movement. Exception: 1. *As skirmishers, guide right* (*left* or *center*), 2. *MARCH.*

17. *The turn on the fixed pivot* by subdivisions is used in all formations from line into column and the reverse.

The turn on the moving pivot is used by subdivisions of a column in executing changes of direction.

18. Partial changes of direction may be executed:

By interpolating in the preparatory command the word *half,* as *Column half right* (*left*), or *Right* (*left*) *half turn.* A change of direction of 45° is executed.

By the command: *GIVE WAY TO THE RIGHT* (*LEFT*). The guide, or guiding element, moves in the indicated direction and the remainder of the command conforms. This movement effects slight changes of directions.

19. The designations, *line of platoons, line of com-*

panies, line of battalions, etc., refer to the formations in which the platoons, companies, battalions, etc., each in column of squads, are in line.

20. Full distance in column of subdivisions is such that in forming line to the right or left the subdvisions will have their proper intervals.

In column of subdivisions the guide of the leading subdivision is charged with the step and direction; the guides in rear preserve the trace, step, and distance.

21. In close order, all details, detachments, and other bodies of troops are habitually formed in double rank.

To insure uniformity of interval between files when falling in, and in alignments, each man places the palm of the left hand upon the hip, fingers pointing downward. In the first case the hand is dropped by the side when the next man on the left has his interval; in the second case, at the command, *front.*

22. The posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, special units (such as band or machine-gun company), etc., in the various formations of the company, battalion, or regiment, are shown in plates.

In all changes from one formation to another involving a change of post on the part of any of these, posts are promptly taken by the most convenient route as soon as practicable after the command of execution for the movement; officers and noncommissioned officers who have prescribed duties in connection with the movement ordered, take their new posts when such duties are completed.

As instructors, officers and noncommissioned officers go wherever their presence is necessary. As file closers it is their duty to rectify mistakes and insure steadiness and promptness in the ranks.

23. Except at ceremonies, the special units have no

fixed places. They take places as directed; in the absence of directions, they conform as nearly as practicable to the plates, and in subsequent movements maintain their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the command on which they were originally posted.

24. General, field, and staff officers are habitually mounted. The staff of an officer forms in single rank 3 paces in rear of him, the right of the rank extending 1 pace to the right of a point directly in rear of him. Members of the staff are arranged in order from right to left as follows: General staff officers, adjutant, aids, other staff officers, arranged in each classification in order of rank, the senior on the right. The flag of the general officer and the orderlies are 3 paces in rear of the staff, the flag on the right. When necessary to reduce the front of the staff and orderlies, each line executes *twos right* or *fours right,* as explained in the Cavalry Drill Regulations, and follows the commander.

When not otherwise prescribed, staff officers draw and return saber with their chief.

25. In making the about, an officer, mounted, habitually turns to the left.

When the commander faces to give commands, the staff, flag, and orderlies do not change position.

26. When making or receiving official reports, or on meeting out of doors, all officers will salute.

Military courtesy requires the junior to salute first, but when the salute is introductory to a report made at a military ceremony or formation, to the representative of a common superior (as, for example, to the adjutant, officer of the day, etc.), the officer making the report, whatever his rank, will salute first; the officer to whom the report is made will acknowledge by saluting that he has received and understood the report.

27. For ceremonies, all mounted enlisted men of a regiment or smaller unit, except those belonging to the machine-gun organizations, are consolidated into a detachment; the senior present commands if no officer is in charge. The detachment is formed as a platoon or squad of cavalry in line or column of fours; noncommissioned staff officers are on the right or in the leading ranks.

28. For ceremonies, such of the noncommissioned staff officers as are dismounted are formed 5 paces in rear of the color, in order of rank from right to left. In column of squads they march as file closers.

29. Other than for ceremonies, noncommissioned staff officers and orderlies accompany their immediate chiefs unless otherwise directed. If mounted, the noncommissioned staff officers are ordinarily posted on the right or at the head of the orderlies.

30. In all formations and movements a noncommissioned officer commanding a platoon or company carries his piece as the men do, if he is so armed, and takes the same post as an officer in like situation. When the command is formed in line for ceremonies, a noncommissioned officer commanding a company takes post on the right of the right guide after the company has been aligned.

ORDERS AND COMMANDS

31. *Commands* only are employed in drill at attention. Otherwise either a *command, signal,* or *order* is employed, as best suits the occasion, or one may be used in conjunction with another.

32. Signals should be freely used in instruction, in order that officers and men may readily know them.

In making arm signals the saber, rifle, or headdress may be held in the hand.

33. Officers and men fix their attention at the first word of command, the first note of the bugle or whistle, or the first motion of the signal. A signal includes both the preparatory command and the command of execution; the movement commences as soon as the signal is understood, unless otherwise prescribed.

34. Except in movements executed at *attention*, commanders or leaders of subdivisions repeat orders, commands, or signals whenever such repetition is deemed necessary to insure prompt and correct execution.

Officers, battalion noncommissioned staff officers, platoon leaders, guides, and musicians are equipped with whistles.

The major and his staff will use a whistle of distinctive tone; the captain and company musicians a second and distinctive whistle; the platoon leaders and guides a third distinctive whistle.

35. Prescribed signals are limited to such as are essential as a substitute for the voice under conditions which render the voice inadequate.

Before or during an engagement special signals may be agreed upon to facilitate the solution of such special difficulties as the particular situation is likely to develop, but it must be remembered that simplicity and certainty are indispensable qualities of a signal.

Orders

36. In these regulations an *order* embraces instructions or directions given orally or in writing in terms suited to the particular occasion and not prescribed herein.

Orders are employed only when the *commands*

scribed herein do not sufficiently indicate the will of the commander.

Orders are more fully described in paragraphs 378 to 383, inclusive, "I. D. R."

Commands

37. In these regulations a *command* is the will of the commander expressed in the phraseology prescribed herein.

38. There are two kinds of commands:

The *preparatory* command, such as *forward*, indicates the movement that is to be executed.

The command of *execution*, such as *MARCH, HALT,* or *ARMS,* causes the execution.

Preparatory commands are distinguished by *italics,* those of *execution* by *CAPITALS.*

Where it is not mentioned in the text who gives the commands prescribed, they are to be given by the commander of the unit concerned.

The *preparatory* command should be given *at* such an interval of time before the command of *execution* as to admit of being properly understood; the command of *execution* should be given at the instant the movement is to commence.

The tone of command is animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men for whom it is intended.

Each *preparatory* command is enunciated distinctly, with a rising inflection at the end, and in such manner that the command of *execution* may be more energetic.

The command of *execution* is firm in tone and brief.

39. Majors and commanders of units larger than a ion repeat such commands of their superior as heir units, facing their units for

that purpose. The battalion is the largest unit that executes a movement at the command of execution of its commander.

40. When giving commands to troops it is usually best to face toward them.

Indifference in giving commands must be avoided as it leads to laxity in execution. Commands should be given with spirit at all times.

SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER

In this chapter you will learn the manual of arms, the facings and salutes. These are the first things a soldier should master. Once you have mastered the school of the soldier, the part you will take as a member of the squad will be relatively easy.

Study the text carefully and by observing the illustrations and your instructor make sure that you execute the movements correctly. If you do not thoroughly understand any command ask the officer or noncommissioned officer who is teaching you to explain the movement until you know how to execute it properly. Never be afraid to ask a question. It is the duty, and should be the pleasure, of your instructor, to make everything clear to you. Remember that probably he was once as awkward as you are now.

Your appearance as a soldier will be judged by your military bearing, the manner in which you execute the manual of arms and the facings and your compliance with the requirements of military courtesy. Therefore, if you would be a smart soldier master this chapter so that it will be second nature for you to do correctly everything called for in the School of the Soldier.

The only way to get this is to *drill, drill, drill.* W

you have done the things called for in this chapter until you no longer have to think how the movements are executed, then, and not until then, will you have mastered the first essentials of a good soldier.

Position of the Soldier, or Attention

[1] 51. Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

Feet turned out equally and forming an angle of about 45°.

Knees straight without stiffness.

Hips level and drawn back slightly; body erect and resting equally on hips; chest lifted and arched; shoulders square and falling equally.

Arms and hands hanging naturally, thumb along the seam of the trousers.

Head erect and squarely to the front, chin drawn in so that the axis of the head and neck is vertical; eyes straight to the front.

Weight of the body resting equally upon the heels and balls of the feet.

The Rests

52. Being at a halt, the commands are: *FALL OUT; REST; AT EASE;* and, 1. *Parade,* 2. *REST.*

At the command *fall out,* the men may leave the ranks, but are required to remain in the immediate vicinity. They resume their former places, at attention, at the command *fall in.*

At the command *rest* each man keeps one foot in place, but is not required to preserve silence or immobility.

[1] These numbers correspond to the numbers in the Infan-

At the command *at ease* each man keeps one foot in place and is required to preserve silence but not immobility.

53. 1. *Parade, 2. REST.* Carry the right foot 6 inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; clasp the hands, without constraint, in front of the center of the body, fingers joined, left hand uppermost, left thumb clasped by the thumb and forefinger of the right hand; preserve silence and steadiness of position.

54. To resume the attention: 1. *Squad, 2. ATTENTION.*

The men take the position of the soldier.

Eyes Right or Left

55. 1. *Eyes, 2. RIGHT (LEFT), 3. FRONT.*

At the command *right,* turn the head to the right oblique, eyes fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank. At the command *front,* turn the head and eyes to the front.

Facings

56. To the flank: 1. *Right (left), 2. FACE.*

Raise slightly the left heel and right toe; face to the right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot; place the left foot by the side of the right. Left face is executed on the left heel in the corresponding manner.

Right (left) half face is executed similarly, facing 45°.

"To face in marching" and advance, turn on the ball of either foot and step off with the other foot in the new line of direction; to face in marching without gaining ground in the new direction, turn on the ball of either foot and mark time.

57. To the rear: 1. *About,* 2. *FACE.*

Carry the toe of the right foot about a half foot-length to the rear and slightly to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot; face to the rear, turning to the right on the left heel and right toe; place the right heel by the side of the left.

Salute with the Hand

58. 1. *Hand,* 2. *SALUTE.*

Raise the right hand smartly till the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress or forehead above the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, forearm inclined at about 45°, hand and wrist straight; at the same time look toward the person saluted. (*TWO*) Drop the arm smartly by the side.

FIG. 1
Hand salute

Steps and Marchings

59. All steps and marchings executed from a halt, except right step, begin with the left foot.

60. The length of the full step in quick time is 30 inches, measured from heel to heel, and the cadence is at the rate of 120 steps per minute.

The length of the full step in double time is 36 inches; the cadence is at the rate of 180 steps per minute.

The instructor, when necessary, indicates the cadence of the step by calling *one, two, three, four,* or *left, right,* the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

61. All steps and marchings and movements involving march are executed in *quick time* unless the squad be marching in *double time*, or *double time* be added to the command; in the latter case *double time* is added to the preparatory command. Example: 1. *Squad right, double time, 2. MARCH* (School of the Squad).

Quick Time

62. Being at a halt, to march forward in quick time: 1. *Forward, 2. MARCH.*

At the command *forward*, shift the weight of the body to the right leg, left knee straight.

At the command *march*, move the left foot smartly straight forward 30 inches from the right, sole near the ground, and plant it without shock; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march. The arms swing naturally.

63. Being at a halt, or in march in quick time, to march in double time: 1. *Double time, 2. MARCH.*

If at a halt, at the first command shift the weight of the body to the right leg. At the command *march*, raise the forearms, fingers closed, to a horizontal position along the waist line; take up an easy run with the step and cadence of double time, allowing a natural swinging motion to the arms.

If marching in quick time, at the command *march*, given as either foot strikes the ground, take one step in quick time, and then step off in double time.

64. To resume the quick time: 1. *Quick time, 2. MARCH.*

At the command *march*, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time; resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

To Mark Time

65. Being in march: 1. *Mark time,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; bring up the foot in rear and continue the cadence by alternately raising each foot about 2 inches and planting it on line with the other.

Being at a halt, at the command *march,* raise and plant the feet as described above.

The Half Step

66. 1. *Half step,* 2. *MARCH.*

Take steps of 15 inches in quick time, 18 inches in double time.

67. *Forward, half step, halt,* and *mark time* may be executed one from the other in quick or double time.

To resume the full step from half step or mark time: 1. *Forward,* 2. *MARCH.*

Side Step

68. Being at a halt or mark time: 1. *Right* (*left*) *step,* 2. *MARCH.*

Carry and plant the right foot 15 inches to the right; bring the left foot beside it and continue the movement in the cadence of quick time.

The side step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

If at order arms, the side step is executed *at trail* without command.

Back Step

69. Being at a halt or mark time: 1. *Backward,* 2. *MARCH.*

Take steps of 15 inches str[illegible] rear.

The back step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

If at order arms, the back step is executed *at trail* without command.

To Halt

70. To arrest the march in quick or double time: 1. *Squad,* 2. *HALT.*

At the command *halt,* given as either foot strikes the ground, plant the other foot as in marching; raise and place the first foot by the side of the other. If in double time, drop the hands by the sides.

To March by the Flank

71. Being in march: 1. *By the right* (*left*) *flank,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot, then face to the right in marching and step off in the new direction with the right foot.

To March to the Rear

72. Being in march: 1. *To the rear,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; turn to the right about on the balls of both feet and immediately step off with the left foot.

If marching in double time, turn to the right about, taking four steps in place, keeping the cadence, and then step off with the left foot.

Change Step

73. Being in march: 1. *Change step,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* given as the right foot strikes

the ground, advance and plant the left foot; plant the toe of the right foot near the heel of the left and step off with the left foot.

The change on the right foot is similarly executed, the command *march* being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

MANUAL OF ARMS

74. As soon as practicable the recruit is taught the use, nomenclature (Fig. 44), and care of his rifle; when fair progress has been made in the instruction without arms, he is taught the manual of arms; instruction without arms and that with arms alternate.

75. The following rules govern the carrying of the piece:

First. The piece is not carried with cartridges in either the chamber or the magazine except when specifically ordered. When so loaded, or supposed to be loaded, it is habitually carried locked; that is, with the *safety lock* turned to the "safe." At all other times it is carried unlocked, with the trigger pulled.

Second. Whenever troops are formed under arms, pieces are immediately inspected at the commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS;* 3. *Order* (*Right shoulder, port*), 4. *ARMS.*

A similar inspection is made immediately before dismissal.

If cartridges are found in the chamber or magazine they are removed and placed in the belt.

Third. The cut-off is kept turned "off" except when cartridges are actually used.

Fourth. The bayonet is not fixed except in bayonet exercise, on guard, or for combat.

Fifth. *Fall in* is executed [illegible] piece at the order

arms. *Fall out, rest,* and *at ease* are executed as without arms. On resuming *attention* the position of order arms is taken.

Sixth. If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, the piece is brought to the right shoulder at the command *march,* the three motions corresponding with the first three steps. Movements may be executed at the trail by prefacing the preparatory command with the words *at trail;* as, 1. *At trail, forward, 2. MARCH;* the trail is taken at the command *march.*

When the facings, alignments, open and close ranks, taking intervals or distance, and assemblings are executed from the order, raise the piece to the trail while in motion and resume the order on halting.

Seventh. The piece is brought to the order on halting. The execution of the order begins when the halt is completed.

Eighth. A disengaged hand in double time is held as when without arms.

76. The following rules govern the execution of the manual of arms:

First. In all positions of the left hand at the balance (center of gravity, bayonet unfixed) the thumb clasps the piece, the sling is included in the grasp of the hand.

Second. In all positions of the piece "diagonally across the body" the position of the piece, left arm and hand are the same as in port arms.

Third. In resuming the order from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with the butt of the piece about 3 inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, the left hand above and near the right, steadying the piece, fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward, all fingers of the right hand grasping the piece. To complete the order,

lower the piece gently to the ground with the right hand, drop the left quickly by the side, and take the position of order arms.

Allowing the piece to drop through the right hand to the ground, or other similar abuse of the rifle to produce effect in executing the manual, is prohibited.

Fourth. The cadence of the motions is that of quick time; the recruits are first required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their pieces. The instructor may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

Fifth. The manual is taught at a halt and the movements are, for the purpose of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail; in this case the command of *execution* determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands, *two, three, four,* that of the other motions.

To execute the movements in detail, the instructor first cautions: *By the numbers;* all movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained until he cautions: *Without the numbers;* or commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

Sixth. Whenever circumstances require, the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings may be ordered without regard to the previous position of the piece.

Under exceptional conditions of weather or fatigue the rifle may be carried in any manner directed.

77. *Position of order arms standing:* The butt rests evenly on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on a line with toe of, and touching, the right shoe, arms and hands hanging naturally, right hand holding the piece between the thumb

FIG. 2
Present arms

78. Being at order arms: 1. *Present,* 2. *ARMS.*

With the right hand carry the piece in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical, grasp it with the left hand at the balance, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. (*TWO*) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

79. Being at order arms: 1. *Port,* 2. *ARMS.*

With the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body, grasp it smartly with both hands; the right, palm down, at the small of the stock; the left, palm up, at the balance; barrel up, sloping to the left and crossing opposite the junction of the neck with the left shoulder; right forearm horizontal; left forearm resting against the body; the piece in a vertical plane parallel to the front.

FIG. 3
Port arms

80. Being at present arms: 1. *Port.* 2. *ARMS.*

Carry the piece diagonally across the body and take the position of port arms.

81. Being at port arms: 1. *Present.* 2. *ARMS.*

Carry the piece to a vertical position in front of the center of the body and take the position of present arms.

82. Being at present or port arms: 1. *Order.* 2. *ARMS.*

Let go with the right hand; lower and carry the piece to the right with the left hand; regrasp it with the right hand just

above the lower band; let go with the left hand, and take the next to the last position in coming to the order. (*TWO*) Complete the order.

83. Being at order arms: 1. *Right shoulder,* 2. *ARMS.*

With the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body; carry the right hand quickly to the butt, embracing it, the heel between the first two fingers. (*TWO*) Without changing the grasp of the right hand, place the piece on the right shoulder, barrel up and inclined at an angle of about 45° from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow near the side, the piece in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front; carry the left hand, thumb and fingers extended and joined, to the small of the stock, tip of the forefinger touching the cocking piece, wrist straight and elbow down. (*THREE*) Drop the left hand by the side.

84. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. *Order,* 2. *ARMS.*

Press the butt down quickly and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining the grasp of the butt. (*TWO*), (*THREE*) Execute order arms as described from port arms.

85. Being at port arms: 1. *Right shoulder,* 2. *ARMS.*

Change the right hand to the butt. (*TWO*), (*THREE*) As in right shoulder arms from order arms.

86. Being at right shoulder
Port, 2. *AR*

FIG. 4.—Next to the last movement in right shoulder arms

Press the butt down quickly and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. (*TWO*) Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

87. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. ***Present, 2. ARMS.***

Execute port arms. (*THREE*) Execute present arms.

88. Being at present arms: 1. ***Right shoulder, 2. ARMS.***

Execute port arms. (*TWO*), (*THREE*), (*FOUR*) Execute right shoulder arms as from port arms.

89. Being at port arms: 1. ***Left shoulder, 2. ARMS.***

Carry the piece with the right hand and place it on the left shoulder, barrel up, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder; at the same time grasp the butt with the left hand, heel between first and second fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. (*TWO*) Drop the right hand by the side.

Being at left shoulder arms: 1. ***Port, 2. ARMS.***

Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (*TWO*) Carry the piece to the right with the right hand, regrasp it with the left, and take the position of port arms.

Left shoulder arms may be ordered directly from the order, right shoulder or present, or the reverse. At the command *arms* execute *port arms* and continue in cadence to the position ordered.

90. Being at order arms: 1. ***Parade, 2. REST.***

Carry the right foot 6 inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; carry the muzzle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the left; grasp the piece with the left hand just below the stacking swivel, and with the right hand below and against the left.

Being at parade rest: 1. ***Squad, 2. ATTENTION.***

Resume the order, the left hand quitting the piece opposite the right hip.

91. Being at order arms: 1. *Trail,* 2. *ARMS.*

Raise the piece, right arm slightly bent, and incline the muzzle forward so that the barrel makes an angle of about 30° with the vertical.

When it can be done without danger or inconvenience to others, the piece may be grasped at the balance and the muzzle lowered until the piece is horizontal; a similar position in the left hand may be used.

92. Being at trail arms: 1. *Order,* 2. *ARMS.*

Lower the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

FIG. 5
Parade rest

FIG. 6
Rifle salute at right shoulder arms

Rifle Salute

93. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. *Rifle,* 2. *SALUTE.*

Carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger touching end of cocking piece; look toward the person saluted. (*TWO*) Drop left hand by the side; turn head and eyes to the front.

94. Being at order or trail arms: 1. *Rifle,* 2. *SALUTE.*

Carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger against piece near the muzzle; look toward

the person saluted. (*TWO*) Drop the left hand by the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

For rules governing salutes, see "Honors and Salutes" (pars. 758-765).

The Bayonet

95. Being at order arms: 1. *Fix,* 2. *BAYONET.*

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Execute parade rest; grasp the bayonet with the right hand, back of hand toward the body; draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order.

If the bayonet is carried on the haversack: Draw the bayonet with the left hand and fix it in the most convenient manner.

96. *Being at order arms:* 1. *Unfix,* 2. *BAYONET.*

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Execute parade rest; grasp the handle of the bayonet firmly with the right hand, pressing the spring with the forefinger of the right hand; raise the bayonet until the handle is about 12 inches above the muzzle of the piece; drop the point to the left, back of the hand toward the body, and, glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and the body; regrasp the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack: Take the bayonet from the rifle with the left hand and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

If marching or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner and the piece returned to the original position.

Fix and unfix bayonet are executed with promptness and regularity but not in cadence.

97. *CHARGE BAYONET.* Whether executed at halt or in motion, the bayonet is held toward the opponent as in the position of *guard* in the "Manual for Bayonet Exercise."

Exercises for instruction in bayonet combat are prescribed in the "Manual for Bayonet Exercise."

The Inspection

98. Being at order arms: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS.*

At the second command take the position of port arms. (*TWO*) Seize the bolt handle with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, turn the handle up, draw the bolt back, and glance at the chamber. Having found the chamber empty, or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front.

99. Being at inspection arms: 1. *Order* (*Right shoulder, port*), 2. *ARMS.*

At the preparatory command push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, pull the trigger, and resume port arms. At the command *arms,* complete the movement ordered.

To Dismiss the Squad

100. Being at halt: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS,* 3. *Port,* 4. *ARMS,* 5. *DISMISSED.*

CHAPTER V

SCHOOL OF THE SQUAD

The squad is the smallest unit in the military organization. The man directly responsible for the squad is the corporal, who should be a real leader of his men. The spirit of comradeship should be ever present, and every man in the squad should consider it his duty to make his squad the best in the company.

If each man in the squad will consider the rights of every other man and get the pull-together-spirit, the squad will virtually be one loyal little family, and your life as a soldier will be much pleasanter and you'll be much happier.

As in the school of the soldier, make yourself thoroughly familiar with the squad movements. This done, you will have laid the foundation for all military drill.

101. Soldiers are grouped into squads for purposes of instruction, discipline, control, and order.

102. The squad proper consists of a corporal and seven privates.

The movements in the "School of the Squad" are designed to make the squad a fixed unit and to facilitate the control and movement of the company. If the number of men grouped is more than 3 and less than 12, they are formed as a squad of 4 files, the excess above

8 being posted as file closers. If the number grouped is greater than 11, 2 or more squads are formed, with blank file in rear rank if necessary, and the group is termed a platoon.

For the instruction of recruits, when the manual of arms and the facings are to be given, the men should be placed in a single rank.

103. The corporal is the squad leader, and when absent is replaced by a designated private. If no private is designated, the senior in length of service acts as leader.

The corporal, when in ranks, is posted as the left man in the front rank of the squad.

When the corporal leaves the ranks to lead his squad, his rear-rank man steps into the front rank, and the file remains blank until the corporal returns to his place in ranks, when his rear-rank man steps back into the rear rank.

104. In battle officers and sergeants endeavor to preserve the integrity of squads; they designate new leaders to replace those disabled, organize new squads when necessary, and see that every man is placed in a squad.

Men should always remain with the squad to which they belong, but in case it be broken up or they become separated therefrom, they should attach themselves to the nearest squad and platoon leaders, whether these be of their own or of another organization.

105. The squad executes the *halt, rests, facings, steps* and *marchings,* and the *manual of arms* as explained in the School of the Soldier.

To Form the Squad

106. To form the squad the instructor places himself 3 paces in front of where the center is to be and commands: *FALL IN.*

The men assemble at attention, pieces at the order, and are arranged by the corporal in double rank, as nearly as practicable in order of height from right to left, each man dropping his left hand as soon as the man on his left has his interval. The rear rank forms with distance of 40 inches from the front rank.

An easy way to judge this distance is to remember that it is about the same as the length of the rifle.

The instructor then commands: *COUNT OFF.*

At this command all except the right file executes *eyes right,* and beginning on the right, the men in each rank count *one, two, three, four;* each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he counts.

Pieces are then inspected.

Alignments

107. To align the squad, the base file or files having been established: 1. *Right* (*Left*), 2. *DRESS,* 3. *FRONT.*

At the command *dress* all men place the left hand upon the hip (whether dressing to the right or left); each man, except the base file, when on or near the new line executes *eyes right,* and, taking steps of 2 or 3 inches, places himself so that his right arm rests lightly against the arm of the man on his right, and so that his eyes and shoulders are in line with those of the men on his right; the rear-rank men cover in file.

The instructor verifies the alignment of both ranks from the right flank and orders up or back such men as may be in rear, or in advance, of the line; only the men designated move.

At the command *front,* given when the ranks are aligned, each man turns his head and eyes to the front and drops his left hand by his side.

In the first drills the basis of the alignment is established on, or parallel to, the front of the squad; afterward, in oblique directions.

Whenever the position of the base file or files necessitates a considerable movement by the squad, such movement will be executed by marching to the front or oblique, to the flank or backward, as the case may be, without other command, and at the trail.

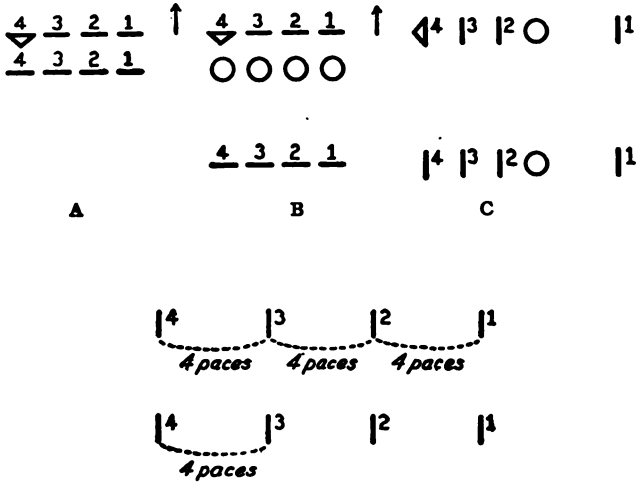
108. To preserve the alignment when marching: *GUIDE RIGHT (LEFT).*

The men preserve their intervals from the side of the guide, yielding to pressure from that side and resisting pressure from the opposite direction; they recover intervals, if lost, by gradually opening out or closing in; they recover alignment by slightly lengthening or shortening the step; the rear-rank men cover their file leaders at 40 inches.

In double rank, the front-rank man on the right, or designated flank, conducts the march; when marching faced to the flank, the leading man of the front rank is the guide.

To Take Intervals and Distances

109. Being in line at a halt: 1. *Take interval,* 2. *To the right (left),* 3. *MARCH* 4. *Squad,* 5.



▽ Represents a corporal.

— Represents a private.

1,2,3,4 Represents the number of each man in the front and rear ranks.

FIG. 7.—A shows the squad in ranks at attention. B shows the squad after the rear rank have marched backward four steps—the O representing the original position of the men in the rear rank. C shows the squad faced to the right, No. 1 of each rank having stepped off four paces. D shows the squad when "Take Interval" has been executed.

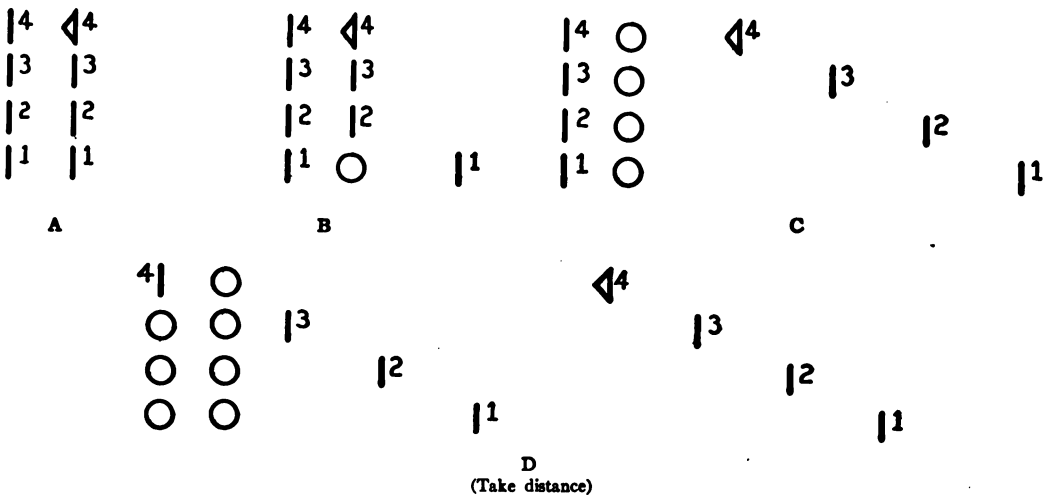


FIG. 8.—A shows the squad in ranks at attention. B shows No. 1 of the front rank after he has moved straight to the front four paces, the O representing his original position. C shows the front rank after Nos. 2, 3 and 4 have moved straight to the front, stepping off so as to follow the preceding man at four paces. D shows the squad after "Take Distance" has been executed.

At the second command the rear-rank men march backward 4 steps and halt; at the command *march* all face to the right and the leading man of each rank steps off; the other men step off in succession, each following the preceding man at 4 paces, rear-rank men marching abreast of their file leaders.

At the command *halt,* given when all have their intervals, all halt and face to the front.

110. Being at intervals, to assemble the squad: 1. *Assemble to the right (left), 2. MARCH.*

The front-rank man on the right stands fast, the rear-rank man on the right closes to 40 inches. The other men face to the right, close by the shortest line, and face to the front.

111. Being in line at a halt and having counted off: 1. *Take distance, 2. MARCH, 3. Squad, 4. HALT.*

At the command *march* No. 1 of the front rank moves straight to the front; Nos. 2, 3, and 4 of the front rank and Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4 of the rear rank, in the order named, move straight to the front, each stepping off so as to follow the preceding man at 4 paces. The command *halt* is given when all have their distances.

In case more than one squad is in line, each squad executes the movement as above. The guide of each rank of numbers is right.

112. Being at distances, to assemble the squad: 1. *Assemble, 2. MARCH.*

No. 1 of the front rank stands fast; the other numbers move forward to their proper places in line.

To Stack and Take Arms

113. Being in line at a halt: *STACK ARMS.*

Each even number of the front rank grasps his piece with the left hand at the upper band and rests the butt

between his feet, barrel to the front, muzzle inclined slightly to the front and opposite the center of the interval on his right, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel; each even number of the rear rank then passes his piece, barrel to the rear, to his file leader, who grasps it between the bands with his right hand and throws the butt about 2 feet in advance of that of his own piece and opposite the right of the interval, the right hand slipping to the upper band, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel, which he engages with that of his own piece; each odd number of the front rank raises his piece with the right hand, carries it well forward, barrel to the front; the left hand, guiding the stacking swivel, engages the lower hook of the swivel of his own piece with the free hook of that of the even number of the rear rank; he then turns the barrel outward into the angle formed by the other two pieces and lowers the butt to the ground, to the right of and against the toe of his right shoe.

The stacks made, the loose pieces are laid on them by the even numbers of the front rank.

When each man has finished handling pieces, he takes the position of the soldier.

114. Being in line behind the stacks: *TAKE ARMS.*

The loose pieces are returned by the even numbers of the front rank; each even number of the front rank grasps his own piece with the left hand, the piece of his rear-rank man with his right hand, grasping both between the bands; each odd number of the front rank grasps his piece in the same way with the right hand, disengages it by raising the butt from the ground and then, turning the piece to the right, detaches it from the stack; each even number of the front rank disengages and detaches his piece by turning it to the left, and then passes the

piece of his rear-rank man to him, and all resume the order.

115. Should any squad have Nos. 2 and 3 blank files, No. 1 rear rank takes the place of No. 2 rear rank in making and breaking the stack; the stacks made or broken, he resumes his post.

Pieces not used in making the stack are termed *loose pieces.*

Pieces are never stacked with the bayonet fixed.

The Oblique March

116. For the instruction of recruits, the squad being in column or correctly aligned, the instructor causes the squad to face half right or half left, points out to the men their relative positions, and explains that these are to be maintained in the oblique march.

117. 1. *Right (Left) oblique,* 2. *MARCH.*

Each man steps off in a direction 45° to the right of his original front. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the guide (the man on the right front of the line or column), and so regulates his steps that the ranks remain parallel to their original front.

At the command *halt* the men halt faced to the front.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward,* 2. *MARCH.*

The men half face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front.

If at *half step* or *mark time* while obliquing, the oblique march is resumed by the commands: 1. *Oblique,* 2. *MARCH.*

To Turn on Moving Pivot

118. Being in line: 1. *Right (Left), turn,* 2. *MARCH.*

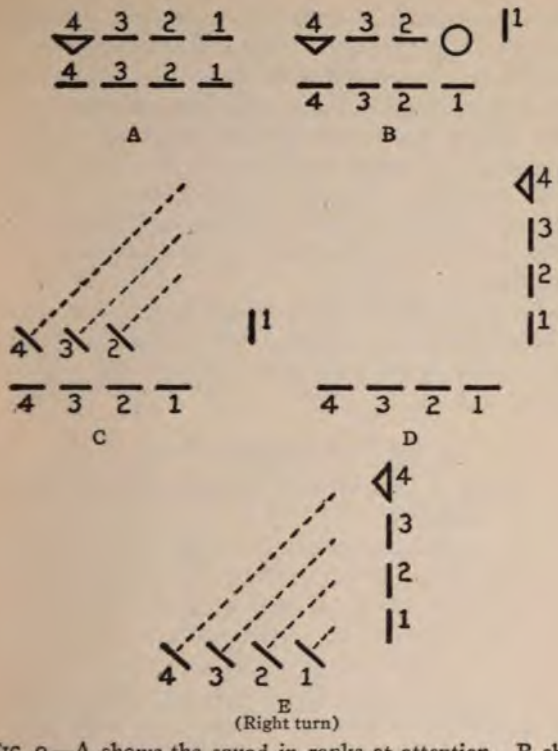


FIG. 9.—A shows the squad in ranks at attention. B shows No. 1 of the front rank after he has faced to the right in marching and is taking the half step. C shows Nos. 2, 3 and 4 of the front rank after each has taken the right oblique position, the dotted lines showing the direction and distance each takes at the right oblique. Then, having arrived opposite his position in the line, each man executes a second right oblique and marches straight to the front, taking up the half step when abreast of No. 1 man, as shown in D. E shows the front rank taking the half step, and also shows the rear rank having taken the right oblique position from which the movement is executed exactly as the front rank did.

The movement is executed by each rank successively and on the same ground. At the second command, the pivot man of the front rank faces to the right in marching and takes the half step; the other men of the rank oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, then execute a second right oblique and take the half step on arriving abreast of the pivot man. All glance toward the marching flank while at half step and take the full step without command as the last man arrives on the line.

Right (*Left*) *half turn* is executed in a similar manner. The pivot man makes a half change of direction to the right and the other men make quarter changes in obliquing.

To Turn on Fixed Pivot

119. Being in line, to turn and march: 1. *Squad right* (*left*), 2. *MARCH.*

At the second command, the right-flank man in the front rank faces to the right in marching and marks time; the other front-rank men oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot, and mark time. In the rear rank the third man from the right, followed in column by the second and first, moves straight to the front until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching and mark time; the other number of the rear rank moves straight to the front four paces and places himself abreast of the man on his right. Men on the new line glance toward the marching flank while marking time and, as the last man arrives on the line, both ranks execute *forward, march,* without command.

120. Being in line, to turn and halt: 1. *Squad right* (*left*), 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Squad,* 4. *HALT.*

The third command is given immediately after the

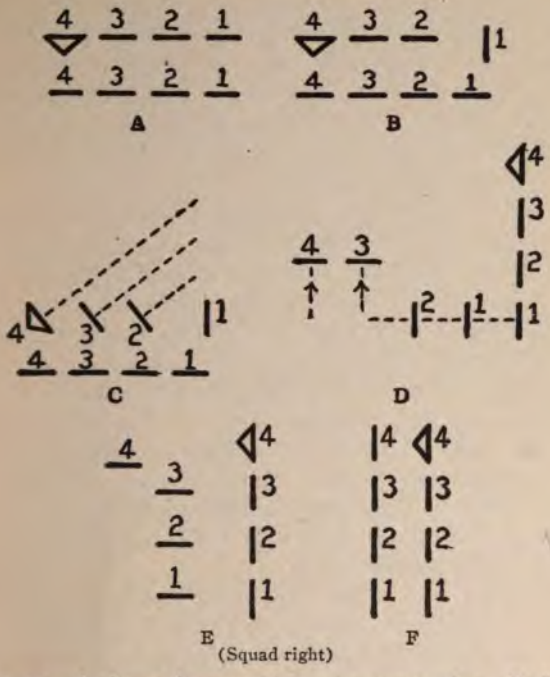


FIG. 10.—A shows the squad in ranks at attention. B shows No. 1 of the front rank or pivot after he has faced to the right and is marking time. C shows Nos. 2, 3 and 4 of the front rank after taking the right oblique position—the dotted lines showing the direction each man will take to place himself abreast of No. 1 or pivot. D shows the front rank in the new position, Nos. 3 and 4 of the rear rank moving straight to the front, and Nos. 2 and 1 of the rear rank faced to the left and following in column No. 3 of the rear rank. E shows No. 4 of the rear rank after he has moved straight to the front four paces and Nos. 3, 2 and 1 of the rear rank after they have arrived in the rear of their front-rank man or file leader. F shows the squad after the rear-rank men have faced to the right in marching, "Squad Right" having been executed.

second. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph except that all men, on arriving on the new line, mark time until the fourth command is given, when all halt. The fourth command should be given as the last man arrives on the line.

121. Being in line, to turn about and march: 1. *Squad right (left) about,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the second command, the front rank twice executes *squad right,* initiating the second *squad right* when the man on the marching flank has arrived abreast of the rank. In the rear rank the third man from the right, followed by the second and first in column, moves straight to the front until on the prolongation of the line to be occupied by the rear rank; changes direction to the right; moves in the new direction until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching, mark time, and glance toward the marching flank. The fourth man marches on the left of the third to his new position; as he arrives on the line, both ranks execute *forward, march,* without command.

122. Being in line, to turn about and halt: 1. *Squad right (left) about,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Squad,* 4. *HALT.*

The third command is given immediately after the second. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph except that all men, on arriving on the new line, mark time until the fourth command is given, when all halt. The fourth command should be given as the last man arrives on the line.

To Follow the Corporal

123. Being assembled or deployed, to march the squad without unnecessary commands, the corporal places himself in front of it and commands: *FOLLOW ME.*

If in line or skirmish line, No. 2 of the front rank follows in the trace of the corporal at about 3 paces; the other men conform to the movements of No. 2, guiding on him and maintaining their relative positions.

If in column, the head of the column follows the corporal.

To Deploy as Skirmishers

124. Being in any formation, assembled: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *MARCH.*

The corporal places himself in front of the squad, if not already there. Moving at a run, the men place themselves abreast of the corporal at half-pace intervals, Nos. 1 and 2 on his right, Nos. 3 and 4 on his left, rear-rank men on the right of their file leaders, extra men on the left of No. 4; all then conform to the corporal's gait.

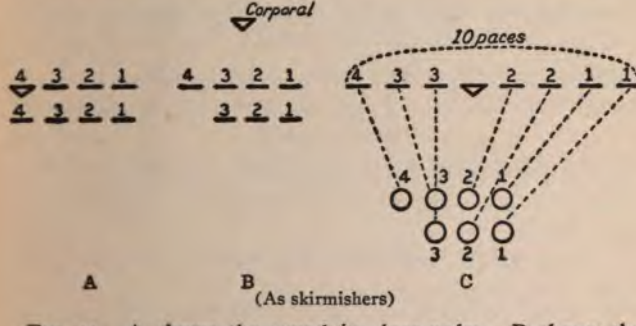


FIG. 11.—A shows the squad in close-order. B shows the corporal 3 paces in front of his squad. C shows by the O the original position of the men; the dotted lines show the path each man has taken to get to his position on the skirmish line.

When the squad is acting alone, skirmish line is similarly formed on No. 2 of the front rank, who stands fast or continues the march, as the case may be; the cor

poral places himself in front of the squad when advancing and in rear when halted.

When deployed as skirmishers, the men march at ease, pieces at the trail unless otherwise ordered.

The corporal is the guide when in the line; otherwise No. 2 front rank is the guide.

125. The normal interval between skirmishers is one-half pace, resulting practically in one man per yard of front. The front of a squad thus deployed as skirmishers is about 10 paces.

To Increase or Diminish Intervals

126. If assembled, and it is desired to deploy at greater than the normal interval; or if deployed, and it is desired to increase or decrease the interval: 1. *As skirmishers, (so many) paces,* 2. *MARCH.*

Intervals are taken at the indicated number of paces. If already deployed, the men move by the flank toward or away from the guide.

The Assembly

127. Being deployed: 1. *Assemble,* 2. *MARCH.*

The men move toward the corporal and form in their proper places.

If the corporal continues to advance, the men move in double time, form, and follow him.

The assembly while marching to the rear is not executed.

Kneeling and Lying Down

128. If standing: *KNEEL.*

Half face to the right; carry the right toe about 1 foot to the left rear of the left heel; kneel on right

knee, sitting as nearly as possible on the right heel; left forearm across left thigh; piece remains in position of order arms, right hand grasping it above the lower band.

129. If standing or kneeling: *LIE DOWN.*

Kneel, but with right knee against left heel; carry back the left foot and lie flat on the belly, inclining body about 35° to the right; piece horizontal, barrel up, muzzle off the ground and pointed to the front; elbows on the ground; left hand at the balance, right hand grasping the small of the stock opposite the neck. This is the position of order arms, lying down.

130. If kneeling or lying down: *RISE.*

If kneeling, stand up, faced to the front, on the ground marked by the left heel.

If lying down, raise body on both knees; stand up, faced to the front, on the ground marked by the knees.

131. If lying down: *KNEEL.*

Raise the body on both knees; take the position of kneeling.

132. In double rank, the positions of kneeling and lying down are ordinarily used only for the better utilization of cover.

When deployed as skirmishers, a sitting position may be taken in lieu of the position kneeling.

LOADINGS AND FIRINGS

133. The commands for loading and firing are the same whether standing, kneeling, or lying down. The firings are always executed at a halt.

When kneeling or lying down in double rank, the rear rank does not load, aim, or fire.

The instruction in firing will be preceded by a command for loading.

Loadings are executed in line and skirmish line only.

134. Pieces having been ordered loaded are kept loaded without command until the command *unload,* or *inspection arms,* fresh clips being inserted when the magazine is exhausted.

135. The aiming point or target is carefully pointed out. This may be done before or after announcing the sight setting. Both are indicated before giving the command for firing, but may be omitted when the target appears suddenly and is unmistakable; in such case battle sight is used if no sight setting is announced.

136. The target or aiming point having been designated and the sight setting announced, such designation or announcement need not be repeated until a change of either or both is necessary.

Troops are trained to continue their fire upon the aiming point or target designated, and at the sight setting announced, until a change is ordered.

137. If the men are not already in the position of load, that position is taken at the announcement of the sight setting; if the announcement is omitted, the position is taken at the first command for firing.

138. When deployed, the use of the sling as an aid to accurate firing is discretionary with each man.

To Load

139. Being in line or skirmish line at halt: 1, *With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges,* 2. *LOAD.*

At the command *load* each front-rank man or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot to the right, about 1 foot, to such position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body; raises, or lowers, the piece and drops it into the left hand at

the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and turns the cut-off up. With the right hand he turns and draws the bolt back, takes a loaded clip and inserts the end in the clip slots, places the thumb on the powder space of the top cartridge, the fingers extending around the piece and tips resting on the magazine floor plate; forces the cartridges into the magazine by pressing down with the thumb; without removing the clip, thrusts the bolt home, turning down the handle; turns the safety lock to the "safe" and carries the hand to the small of the stock. Each rear-rank man moves to the right front, takes a similar position opposite the interval to the right of his front-rank man, muzzle of the piece extending beyond the front rank, and loads.

A skirmish line may load while moving, the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of load.

If kneeling or sitting, the position of the piece is similar; if kneeling, the left forearm rests on the left thigh; if sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees. If lying down, the left hand steadies and supports the piece at the balance, the toe of the butt resting on the ground, the muzzle off the ground.

For reference, these positions (standing, kneeling, and lying down) are designated as that of *load*.

140. For instruction in loading: 1. *Simulate,* 2. *LOAD.*

Executed as above described except that the cut-off remains "off" and the handling of cartridges is simulated.

The recruits are first taught to *simulate* loading and firing; after a few lessons dummy cartridges may be used. Later, blank cartridges may be used.

141. The rifle may be used as a single loader by turn-

ing the magazine "off." The magazine may be filled in whole or in part while "off" or "on" by pressing cartridges singly down and back until they are in the proper place. The use of the rifle as a single loader is, however, to be regarded as exceptional.

To Unload

142. *UNLOAD.*

Take the position of load, turn the safety lock up and move bolt alternately back and forward until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected the chamber is closed by first thrusting the bolt slightly forward to free it from the stud holding it in place when the chamber is open, pressing the follower down and back to engage it under the bolt and then thrusting the bolt home; the trigger is pulled. The cartridges are then picked up, cleaned, and returned to the belt and the piece is brought to the order.

To Set the Sight

143. *RANGE, ELEVEN HUNDRED (EIGHT-FIFTY, etc.)*, or *BATTLE SIGHT.*

The sight is set at the elevation indicated. The instructor explains and verifies sight settings.

To Fire by Volley

144. 1. *READY,* 2. *AIM,* 3. *Squad,* 4. *FIRE.*

At the command *ready* turn the safety lock to the "ready"; at the command *aim* raise the piece with both hands and support the butt firmly against the hollow of the right shoulder, right thumb clasping the stock, barrel horizontal, left elbow well under the piece, right elbow as high as the shoulder; incline the head slightly for-

ward and a little to the right, cheek against the stock, left eye closed, right eye looking through the notch of the rear sight so as to perceive the object aimed at, second joint of forefinger resting lightly against the front of the trigger and taking up the slack; top of front sight is carefully raised into, and held in, the line of sight.

Each rear-rank man aims through the interval to the right of his file leader and leans slightly forward to advance the muzzle of his piece beyond the front rank.

In aiming kneeling, the left elbow rests on the left knee, point of elbow in front of kneecap. In aiming sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees.

In aiming lying down, raise the piece with both hands; rest on both elbows and press the butt firmly against the right shoulder.

At the command *fire* press the finger against the trigger; fire without deranging the aim and without lowering or turning the piece; lower the piece in the position of *Load* and load.

145. To continue the firing: 1, *AIM,* 2. *Squad,* 3. *FIRE.*

Each command is executed as previously explained. *Load* (from magazine) is executed by drawing back and thrusting home the bolt with the right hand, leaving the safety lock at the "ready."

To Fire at Will

146. *FIRE AT WILL.*

Each man, independently of the others, comes to the *ready,* aims carefully and deliberately at the aiming point or target, *fires, loads,* and continues the firing until ordered to *suspend* or *cease firing.*

147. To increase (decrease) the rate of fire in progress the instructor shouts: *FASTER (SLOWER).*

Men are trained to fire at the rate of about three shots per minute at effective ranges and five or six at close ranges, devoting the minimum of time to loading and the maximum to deliberate aiming. To illustrate the necessity for deliberation, and to habituate men to combat conditions, small and comparatively indistinct targets are designated.

To Fire by Clip

148. *CLIP FIRE.*

Executed in the same manner as *fire at will,* except that each man, after having exhaused the cartridges then in the piece, *suspends firing.*

To Suspend Firing

149. The instructor blows a *long blast* of the whistle and repeats same, if necesary, or commands: *SUSPEND FIRING.*

Firing stops; pieces are held, loaded and locked, in a position of readiness for instant resumption of firing, rear sights unchanged. The men continue to observe the target or aiming point, or the place at which the target disappeared, or at which it is expected to reappear.

The whistle signal may be used as a preliminary to *cease firing.*

To Cease Firing

150. *CEASE FIRING.*

Firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of load; those not loaded, are loaded; sights are laid, pieces are locked and brought to the order.

Cease firing is used for long pauses, to prepare for changes of position, or to steady the men.

151. Commands for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the preparatory command for firing whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

THE USE OF COVER

152. The recruit should be given careful instruction in the individual use of cover.

It should be impressed upon him that, in taking advantage of natural cover, he must be able to fire easily and effectively upon the enemy; if advancing on an enemy, he must do so steadily and as rapidly as possible; he must conceal himself as much as possible while firing and while advancing. While setting his sight, he should be under cover or lying prone.

153. To teach him to fire easily and effectively, at the same time concealing himself from the view of the enemy, he is practiced in simulated firing in the prone, sitting, kneeling, and crouching positions, from behind hillocks, trees, heaps of earth or rocks, from depressions, gullies, ditches, doorways, or windows. He is taught to fire around the right side of his concealment whenever possible, or, when this is not possible, to rise enough to fire over the top of his concealment.

When these details are understood, he is required to select cover with reference to an assumed enemy and to place himself behind it in proper position for firing.

154. The evil of remaining too long in one place, however good the concealment, should be explained. He should be taught to advance from cover to cover, selecting cover in advance before leaving his concealment.

It should be impressed upon him that a man running rapidly toward an enemy furnishes a poor target. He should be trained in springing from a prone position behind concealment, running at top speed to cover and

throwing himself behind it. He should also be practiced in advancing from cover to cover by crawling, or by lying on the left side, rifle grasped in the right hand, and pushing himself forward with the right leg.

155. He should be taught that, when fired on while acting independently he should drop to the ground, seek cover, and then endeavor to locate his enemy.

156. The instruction of the recruit in the use of cover is continued in the combat exercises of the company, but he must then be taught that the proper advance of the platoon or company and the effectiveness of its fire is of greater importance than the question of cover for individuals. He should also be taught that he may not move about or shift his position in the firing line except the better to see the target.

OBSERVATION

157. The ability to use his eyes accurately is of great importance to the soldier. The recruit should be trained in observing his surroundings from positions and when on the march.

He should be practiced in pointing out and naming military features of the ground; in distinguishing between living beings; in counting distant groups of objects or beings; in recognizing colors and forms.

158. In the training of men in the mechanism of the firing line, they should be practiced in repeating to one another target and aiming-point designations and in quickly locating and pointing out a designated target. They should be taught to distinguish, from a prone position, distant objects, particularly troops, both with the naked eye and with field glasses. Similarly, they should be trained in estimating distances.

CHAPTER VI

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY

Each member of the squad should remember that the squad is the unit in making up the company. For example, when the command *squads RIGHT* is given, each squad executes the movement precisely as in the School of the Squad. If each squad executes the movement correctly, then the movement will be correct for the entire company.

Corporals should always see that their squads execute each movement correctly. The sergeants should also remember that they are not figureheads, but have a very important duty to perform. They should be alert and see that the men of their platoon correctly execute each movement.

The lieutenants can be of especial help to the captain by being ever on the watch to assist and instruct the noncommissioned officers. The captain will do well to give his lieutenants plenty of leeway and then hold them responsible for results.

[1]159. The captain is responsible for the theoretical and practical instruction of his officers and noncommissioned officers, not only in the duties of their respective grades, but in those of the next higher grades.

160. The company in line is formed in double rank with the men arranged, as far as practicable, according to height from right to left, the tallest on the right.

The original division into squads is effected by the command: *COUNT OFF.* The squads, successively from

[1] Corresponds to the paragraph numbers in the Infantry Drill Regulations.

46 **SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.**

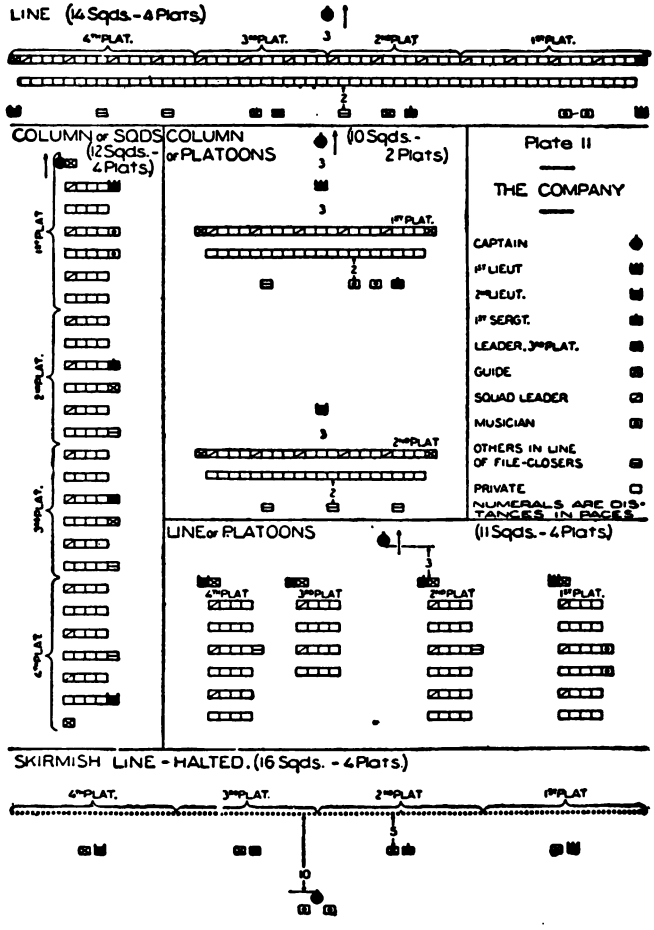


FIG. 12

the right, count off as in the School of the Squad, corporals placing themselves as Nos. 4 of the front rank. If the left squad contains less than six men, it is either increased to that number by transfers from other squads or is broken up and its members assigned to other squads and posted in the line of file closers. These squad organizations are maintained, by transfers if necessary, until the company becomes so reduced in numbers as to necessitate a new division into squads. No squad will contain less than six men.

161. The company is further divided into two, three, or four platoons, each consisting of not less than two nor more than four squads. In garrison or ceremonies the strength of platoons may exceed four squads.

162. At the formation of the company the platoons or squads are numbered consecutively from right to left and these designations do not change.

For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the designations, *right, center, left,* when in line, and *leading, center, rear,* when in column, are applied to platoons or squads. These designations apply to the actual right, left, center, head, or rear, in whatever direction the company may be facing. The *center squad* is the middle or right middle squad of the company.

The designation "So-and-so's" squad or platoon may also be used.

163. Platoons are assigned to the lieutenants and noncommissioned officers, in order of rank, as follows: 1, right; 2, left; 3, center (right center); 4, left center.

The noncommissioned officers next in rank are assigned as guides, one to each platoon. If sergeants still remain, they are assigned to platoons as additional guides. When the platoon is deployed, its guide, or guides, accompany the platoon leader.

During battle, these assignments are not changed; vacancies are filled by noncommissioned officers of the platoon, or by the nearest available officers or noncommissioned officers arriving with reënforcing troops.

164. The first sergeant is never assigned as a guide. When not commanding a platoon, he is posted as a file closer opposite the third file from the outer flank of the first platoon; and when the company is deployed he accompanies the captain.

The quartermaster sergeant, when present, is assigned according to his rank as a sergeant.

Enlisted men below the grade of sergeant, armed with the rifle, are in ranks unless serving as guides; when not so armed, they are posted in the line of file closers.

Musicians, when required to play, are at the head of the column. When the company is deployed, they accompany the captain.

165. The company executes the *halt, rests, facings, steps* and *marchings, manual of arms, loadings* and *firings, takes intervals* and *distances* and *assembles, increases* and *diminishes intervals,* resumes *attention, obliques,* resumes the direct march, preserves alignments, *kneels, lies down, rises, stacks* and *takes arms,* as explained in the Schools of the Soldier and the Squad, substituting in the commands *company* for *squad.*

The same rule applies to platoons, detachments, details, etc., substituting their designation for *squad* in the commands. In the same manner these execute the movements prescribed for the company, whenever possible, substituting their designation for *company* in the commands.

166. A company so depleted as to make division into platoons impracticable is led by the captain as a single platoon, but retains the designation of company. The lieutenants and first sergeant assist in fire control; the

other sergeants place themselves in the firing line as skirmishers.

CLOSE ORDER

Rules

167. The guides of the right and left, or leading and rear, platoons, are the right and left, or leading and rear, guides, respectively, of the company when it is in line or in column of squads. Other guides are in the line of file closers.

In platoon movements the post of the platoon guide is at the head of the platoon, if the platoon is in column, and on the guiding flank if in line. When a platoon has two guides their original assignment to flanks of the platoon does not change.

168. The guides of a column of squads place themselves on the flank opposite the file closers. To change the guides and file closers to the other flank, the captain commands: 1. *File closers on left* (*right*) *flank;* 2. *MARCH.* The file closers dart through the column; the captain and guides change.

In columns of squads, each rank preserves the alignment toward the side of the guide.

169. Men in the line of file closers do not execute the loadings or firings.

Guides and enlisted men in the line of file closers execute the manual of arms during the drill unless specially excused, when they remain at the order. During ceremonies they execute all movements.

170. In *taking intervals and distances,* unless otherwise directed, the right and left guides, at the first command, place themselves in the line of file closers, and, with them, take a distance of 4 paces from the rear rank. In taking intervals, at the command *march,* the file closers

face to the flank and each steps off with the file nearest him. In *assembling* the guides and file closers resume their positions in line.

171. In movements executed simultaneously by platoons (as *platoons right* or *platoons, column right*), platoon leaders repeat the preparatory command (*platoon right,* etc.), applicable to their respective platoons. The command of execution is given by the captain only.

To Form the Company

172. At the sounding of the assembly the first sergeant take position 6 paces in front of where the center of the company is to be, faces it, draws saber, and commands: *FALL IN.*

The right guide of the company places himself, facing to the front, where the right of the company is to rest, and at such point that the center of the company will be 6 paces from and opposite the first sergeant; the squads form in their proper places on the left of the right guide, superintended by the other sergeants, who then take their posts.

The first sergeant commands: *REPORT.* Remaining in position at the order, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, salute and report: *All present;* or, *Private(s) —— absent.* The first sergeant does not return the salute of the squad leaders; he then commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS,* 3. *Order,* 4. *ARMS,* faces about, salutes the captain, reports: *Sir, all present or accounted for,* or the names of the unauthorized absentees, and, without command, takes his post.

If the company can not be formed by squads, the first sergeant commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS,* 3. *Right shoulder,* 4. *ARMS,* and calls the roll. Each man, as his name is called, answers *here* and executes order arms.

The sergeant then effects the division into squads and reports the company as prescribed above.

The captain places himself 12 paces in front of the center of, and facing, the company in time to receive the report of the first sergeant, whose salute he returns, and then draws saber.

The lieutenants take their posts when the first sergeant has reported and draws saber with the captain. The company, if not under arms, is formed in like manner, omitting reference to arms.

173. For the instruction of platoon leaders and guides, the company, when small, may be formed in single rank. In this formation close order movements only are executed. The single rank executes all movements as explained for the front rank of a company.

To Dismiss the Company

174. Being in line at a halt, the captain directs the first sergeant: *Dismiss the Company.* The officers fall out; the first sergeant places himself faced to the front, 3 paces to the front and 2 paces from the nearest flank of the company, salutes, faces toward opposite flank of the company, and commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS,* 3. *Port,* 4. *ARMS,* 5. *DISMISSED.*

Alignments

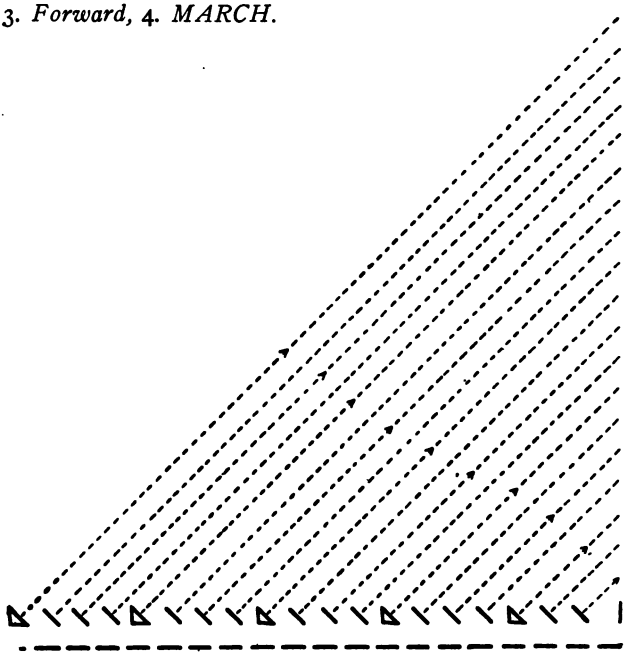
175. The alignments are executed as prescribed in the School of the Squad, the guide being established instead of the flank file. The rear-rank man of the flank file keeps his head and eyes to the front and covers his file leader.

At each alignment the captain places himself in prolongation of the line, 2 paces from and facing the flank toward which the dress is made, verifies the alignment, and commands: *FRONT.*

Platoon leaders take a like position when required to verify alignments.

Movements on the Fixed Pivot

176. Being in line, to turn the company: 1. *Company right (left)*, 2. *MARCH*, 3. *Company*, 4. *HALT;* or, 3. *Forward*, 4. *MARCH.*



A
(Company right)

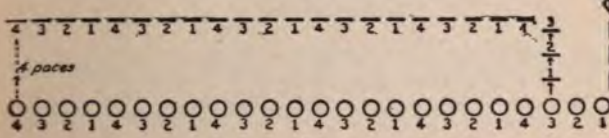
FIG. 13.—A shows No. 1 of the front rank or the right-flank man faced to the right in marching, and marking time. It also shows the other men of the front rank faced to the right oblique, the dotted lines showing the path each takes to place himself abreast of the right-flank man. The rear rank are shown in their original position.

At the second command the right-flank man in the front rank faces to the right in marching and marks time; the other front-rank men oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot, and mark time; in the rear rank the third man from the right, followed in column by the second and first, moves straight to the front until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching, and mark time; the remaining men of the rear rank move straight to the front 4 paces, oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the third man, cover their file leaders, and mark time; the right guide steps back, takes post on the flank, and marks time.

The fourth command is given when the last man is 1 pace in rear of the new line.

The command *halt* may be given at any time after the new position. Each of the others halts upon arriving on the line, aligns himself to the right, and executes *front* without command.

177. Being in line, to form columns of platoons, or the reverse: 1. *Platoons right* (*left*), 2.



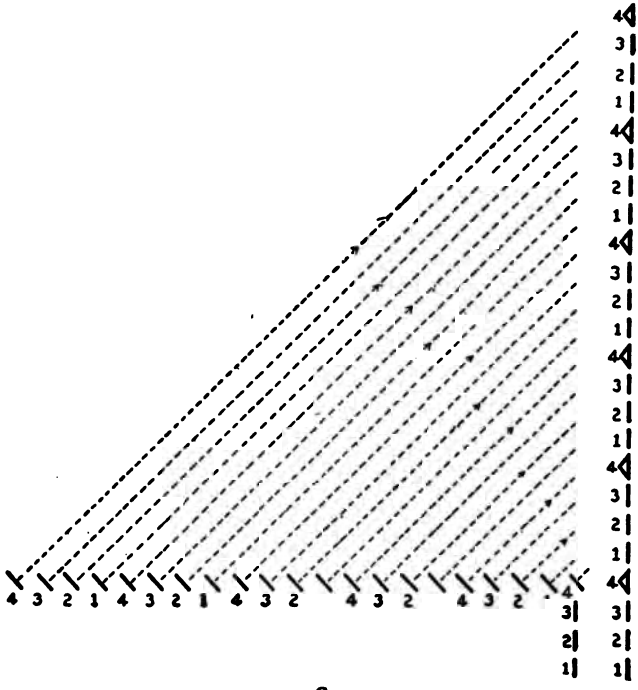
B
(Company right)

FIG. 13.—B shows the front rank after having executed *Company right.* It also shows No. 3 of rear rank from the right marching straight to the front until in the rear of his front-rank man, followed in column by Nos. 2 and 1. The rest of the rear rank are shown after they have marched straight to the front four paces; the O's represent the original position of the rear rank.

MARCH, 3. *Company,* 4. *HALT;* or, 3. *Forward,* 4. *MARCH.*

Executed by each platoon as described for the company.

Before forming line the captain sees that the guides on the flank toward which the movement is to be exe-


4 3 2 1 4 3 2 1 4 3 2 4 3 2 4 3 2 4
4 3 2 1 4 3 2 1 4 3 2 1

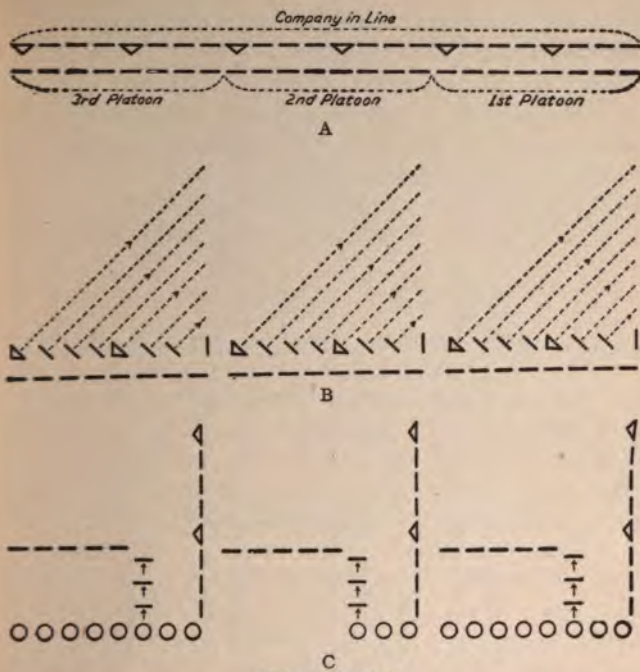


FIG. 14.—A shows the company in line with three platoons of two squads each. B shows the right-flank man of each platoon faced in marching and marking time. It also shows the other front-rank men of each platoon after they have taken the right oblique, the dotted lines showing the path each takes to place himself abreast of the right-flank man. C shows the front-rank men of each platoon in proper position. It also shows the third man in the rear rank from the right in each platoon after he has marched straight to the front, followed in column by Nos. 2 and 1 of the rear rank until opposite their file leaders. This figure also shows the rest of the rear-rank men after they have marched straight to the front four paces.

cuted are covering. This is effected by previously announcing the guide to that flank.

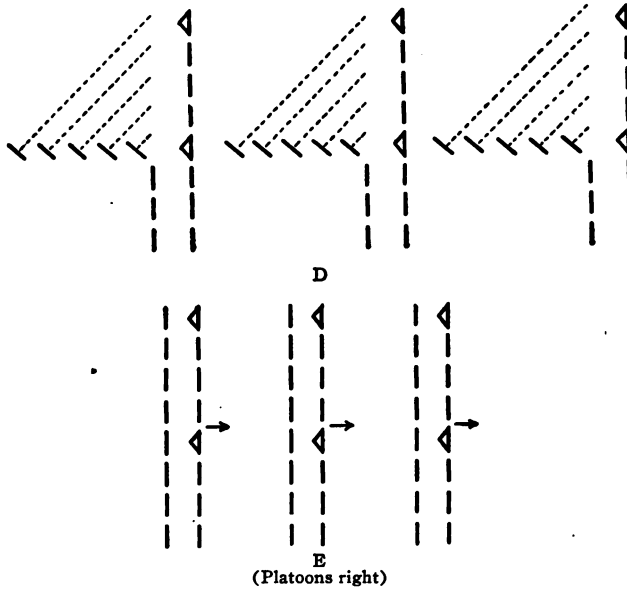


FIG. 14.—D shows the three men on the right in the rear rank in each platoon faced to the right and marking time in place. It also shows the other men of the rear rank after having marched straight to the front four paces and taken the right oblique position, the dotted lines showing the path each takes to reach his position in the new line. E shows the three platoons in column of platoons after "Platoons right" has been executed.

178. Being in line, to form column of squads, or the reverse; or, being in line of platoons, to form column of platoons, or the reverse: 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. *MARCH;* or, 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Company,* 4. *HALT.*

Executed by each squad as described in the "School of the Squad."

If the company or platoons be formed in line toward the side of the file closers, they dart through the column and take posts in rear of the company at the second command. If the column of squads be formed from line, the file closers take posts on the pivot flank, abreast of and 4 inches from the nearest rank.

Movements on the Moving Pivot

179. Being in line, to change direction: 1. *Right (Left) turn*, 2. *MARCH*, 3. *Forward*, 4. *MARCH*.

Executed as described in the "School of the Squad," except that the men do not glance toward the marching flank and that all take the full step at the fourth command. The right guide is the pivot of the front rank. Each rear-rank man obliques on the same ground as his file leader.

180. Being in column of platoons, to change direction: 1. *Column right (left)*, 2. *MARCH*.

At the first command the leader of the leading platoon commands: *Right turn*. At the command *march* the leading platoon turns to the right on moving pivot; its leader commands: 1. *Forward*, 2. *MARCH*, on completion of the turn. Rear platoons march squarely up to the turning point of the leading platoon and turn at command of their leaders.

181. Being in column of squads, to change direction: 1. *Column right (left)*, 2. *MARCH*.

At the second command the front rank of the leading squad turns to the right on moving pivot as in the School of the Squad; the other ranks, without command, turn successively on the same ground and in a similar manner.

182. Being in column of squads, to form line of platoons or the reverse: 1. *Platoons, column right (left),* 2. *MARCH.*

Executed by each platoon as described for the company.

183. Being in line, to form column of squads and change direction: 1. *Squads right (left), column right (left),* 2. *MARCH;* or, 1. *Right (left) by squads,* 2. *MARCH.*

In the first case the right squad initiates the *column right* as soon as it has completed the *squad right.*

In the second case, at the command *march,* the right squad marches *forward;* the remainder of the company executes *squads right, column left,* and follows the right squad. The right guide, when he has posted himself in front of the right squad, takes four short steps, then resumes the full step; the right squad conforms.

184. Being in line, to form line of platoons: 1. *Squads right (left), platoons, column right (left),* 2. *MARCH;* or, 1. *Platoons, right (left) by squads,* 2. *MARCH.*

Executed by each platoon as described for the company in the preceding paragraph.

Facing or Marching to the Rear

185. Being in line, line of platoons, or in column of platoons or squads, to face or march to the rear: 1. *Squads right (left) about,* 2. *MARCH;* or, 1. *Squads right (left) about,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Company,* 4. *HALT.*

Executed by each squad as described in the "School of the Squad."

If the company or platoons be in column of squads, the file closers turn about toward the column and take their posts; if in line, each darts through the nearest interval between squads.

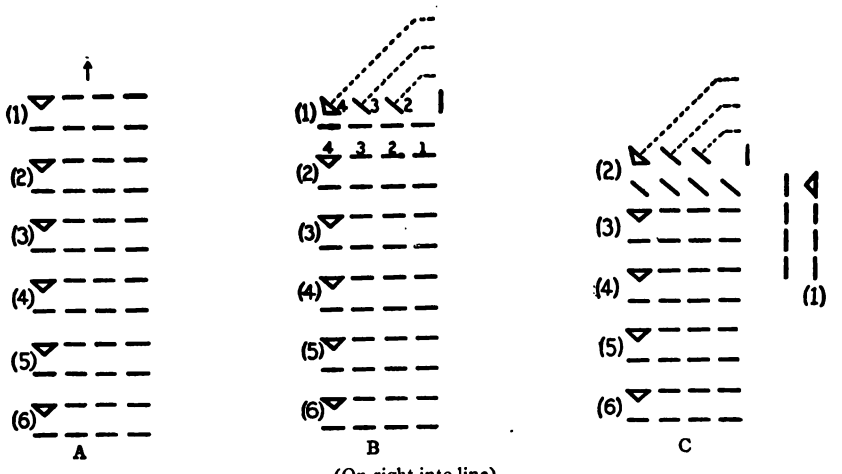


FIG. 15.—A shows the company in column of squads. B shows the front rank of the leading squad executing right turn. C shows the first squad (1) after they have executed right turn and the second squad (2) executing right turn after they have arrived opposite their place in line, having first marched straight to the front. D shows the company after *On right into line* has been executed. *On left into line* is similarly executed, except that the leading squad execute left turn, etc.

186. To march to the rear for a few paces: 1. *About,* 2. *FACE,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *MARCH.*

If in line, the guides place themselves in the rear rank, now the front rank; the file closers, on facing about, maintain their relative positions. No other movement is executed until the line is faced to the original front.

On Right (Left) into Line

187. Being in column of platoons or squads, to form line on right or left: 1. *On right (left) into line,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Company,* 4. *HALT,* 5. *FRONT.*

At the first command the leader of the leading unit commands: *Right turn.* The leaders of the other units command: *Forward,* if at a halt. At the second command the leading unit turns to the right on moving pivot. The command *halt* is given when the leading unit has advanced the desired distance in the new direction; it halts; its leader then commands: *Right dress.*

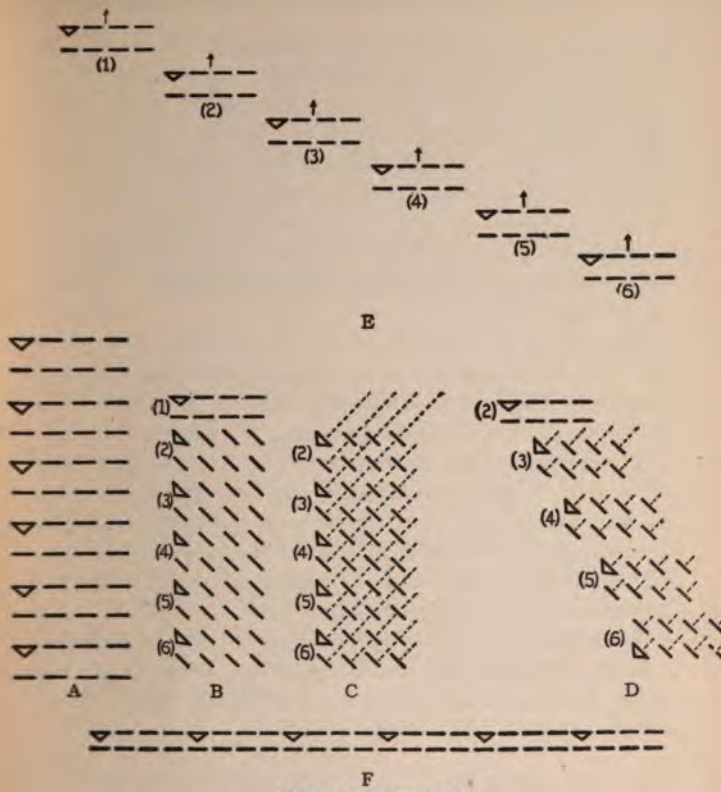
The units in rear continue to march straight to the front; each, when opposite the right of its place in line, executes *right turn* at the command of its leader; each is halted on the line at the command of its leader, who then commands: *Right dress.* All dress on the first unit in line.

If executed in double time, the leading squad marches in double time until halted.

Front into Line

188. Being in column of platoons or squads, to form line to the front: 1. *Right (Left) front into line,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Company,* 4. *HALT,* 5. *FRONT.*

At the first command the leaders of the units in rear of the leading one command: *Right oblique.* If at a halt,



(Right front into line)

FIG. 16.—A shows the company in column of squads. B shows the leading squad marching straight to the front and all the other squads after they have taken the right oblique position. C shows, in addition, the path each man takes along the dotted lines. D shows the second squad after they have resumed the original direction, being opposite their positions in line. It also shows the others still obliquing to the right. E shows all of the squads faced in the original direction and marching to their place in the line. F shows the company after *Right front into line* has been executed.

the leader of the leading unit commands: *Forward.* At the second command the leading unit moves straight forward; the rear units oblique as indicated. The command *halt* is given when the leading unit has advanced the desired distance; it halts; its leader then commands: *Left dress.* Each of the rear units, when opposite its place in line, resumes the original direction at the command of its leader; each is halted on the line at the command of its leader, who then commands: *Left dress.* All dress on the first unit in line.

189. Being in column of squads to form column of platoons, or being in line of platoons, to form the company in line: 1. *Platoons, right (left) front into line,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Company,* 4. *HALT,* 5. *FRONT.*

Executed by each platoon as described for the company. In forming the company in line, the dress is on the left squad of the left platoon. If forming column of platoons, platoon leaders verify the alignment before taking their posts; the captain commands *front* when the alignments have been verified.

When *front into line* is executed in double time the commands for halting and aligning are omitted and the guide is toward the side of the first unit in line.

AT EASE AND ROUTE STEP

190. The column of squads is the habitual column of route, but *route step* and *at ease* are applicable to any marching formation.

191. To march at route step: 1. *Route step,* 2. *MARCH.*

Sabers are carried at will or in the scabbard; the men carry their pieces at will, keeping the muzzles elevated; they are not required to preserve silence, nor to keep the

step. The ranks cover and preserve their distance. If halted from route step, the men stand *at rest.*

192. To march at ease: 1. *At ease,* 2. *MARCH.*

The company marches as in route step, except that silence is preserved; when halted, the men remain *at ease.*

193. Marching at route step or at ease: 1. *Company,* 2. *ATTENTION.*

At the command *attention* the pieces are brought to the right shoulder and the cadenced step in quick time is resumed.

TO DIMINISH THE FRONT OF A COLUMN OF SQUADS

194. Being in column of squads: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *by twos,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* all files except the two right files of the leading squad execute *in place halt;* the two left files of the leading squad oblique to the right when disengaged and follow the right files at the shortest practicable distance. The remaining squads follow successively in like manner.

195. Being in column of squads or twos: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *by file,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* all files execute *in place halt,* except the right file of the leading two or squad. The left file or files of the leading two or squad oblique successively to the right when disengaged and each follows the file on its right at the shortest practicable distance. The remaining twos or squads follow successively in like manner.

196. Being in column of files or twos, to form column of squads: or, being in column of files, to form column of

twos: 1. *Squads (Twos), right (left) front into line, 2. MARCH.*

At the command *march,* the leading file or files halt. The remainder of the squad, or two, obliques to the right and halts on line with the leading file or files. The remaining squads or twos close up and successively form in rear of the first in like manner.

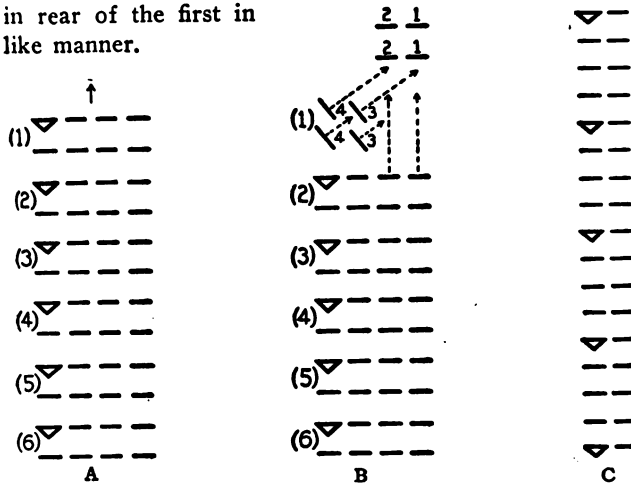


FIG. 17.—A shows the company in column of squads. B shows the first squad executing right by twos. Observe that Nos. 1 and 2 of both front and rear rank keep the same direction, that is, straight to the front, as in column of squads, while Nos. 3 and 4 of both ranks oblique to the right, Nos. 3 and 4 of the front rank moving as indicated by the dotted lines into positions in the rear of Nos. 1 and 2 of the rear rank, and Nos. 3 and 4 of the rear rank moving similarly and taking up positions in the rear of Nos. 3 and 4 of the front rank. Each squad executes this movement in the same manner. C shows the company in column of twos. To reform column of squads, each squad executes left front into line.

The movement described in this paragraph will be ordered *right* or *left,* so as to restore the files to their normal relative positions in the two or squad.

197. The movements prescribed in the three preceding paragraphs are difficult of execution at attention and have no value as disciplinary exercises.

198. Marching by twos or files can not be executed without serious delay and waste of road space. Every reasonable precaution will be taken to obviate the necessity for these formations.

EXTENDED ORDER

Rules for Deployment

199. The command *guide right* (*left* or *center*) indicates the base squad for the deployment; if in line it designates the actual *right* (*left* or *center*) squad; if in column the command *guide right* (*left*) designates the *leading* squad, and the command *guide center* designates the *center* squad. After the deployment is completed, the guide is *center* without command, unless otherwise ordered.

200. At the preparatory command for forming skirmish line, from either column of squads or line, each squad leader (except the leader of the base squad, when his squad does not advance), cautions his squad, *follow me* or *by the right* (*left*) *flank,* as the case may be; at the command *march,* he steps in front of his squad and leads it to its place in line.

201. Having given the command for forming skirmish line, the captain, if necessary, indicates to the corporal of the base squad the point on which the squad is to march; the corporal habitually looks to the captain for such directions.

202. The base squad is deployed as soon as it has sufficient interval. The other squads are deployed as they arrive on the general line; each corporal halts in his place in line and commands or signals, *as skirmishers;* the squad deploys and halts abreast of him.

If tactical considerations demand it, the squad is deployed before arriving on the line.

203. Deployed lines preserve a general alignment toward the guide. Within their respective fronts, individuals or units march so as best to secure cover or to facilitate the advance, but the general and orderly progress of the whole is paramount.

On halting, a deployed line faces to the front (direction of the enemy) in all cases and takes advantage of cover, the men lying down if necessary.

204. The company in skirmish line *advances, halts,* moves *by the flank,* or *to the rear, obliques,* resumes *the direct march,* passes from *quick* to *double time* and the reverse by the same commands and in a similar manner as in close order; if at a halt, the movement *by the flank* or *to the rear* is executed by the same commands as when marching. *Company right* (*left, half right, half left*) is executed as explained for the front rank, skirmish intervals being maintained.

205. A platoon or other part of the company is deployed and marched in the same manner as the company, substituting in the commands, *platoon* (*detachment,* etc.) for *company.*

Deployments

206. Being in line, to form skirmish line to the front: 1. *As skirmishers, guide right* (*left* or *center*), 2. *MARCH.*

If marching, the corporal of the base squad moves

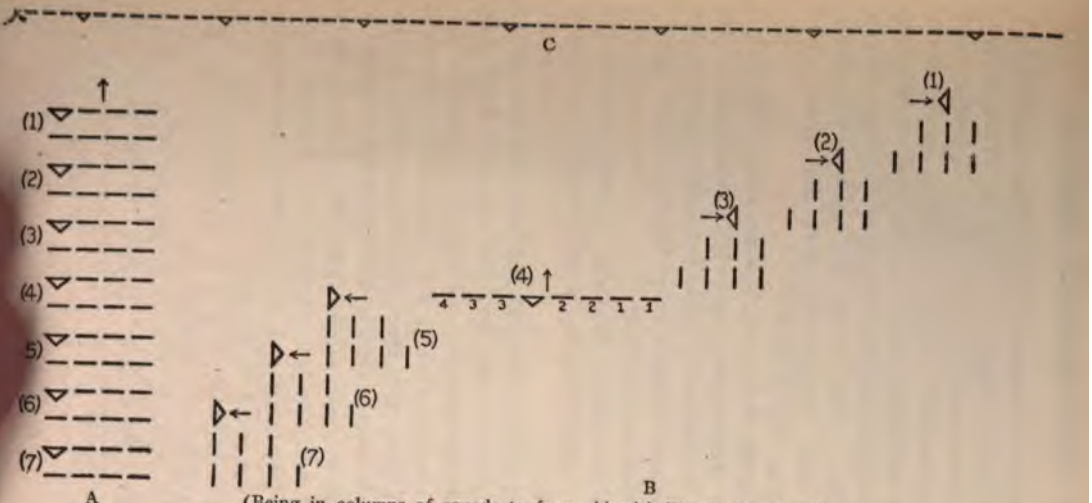


FIG. 18.—A shows the company of seven squads in column of squads. B shows the 4th or center squad deployed as skirmishers. It also shows the 1st, 2d and 3d squads faced to the right and marching to the right, and also the 5th, 6th and 7th squads faced to the left and marching to the left. The squad leaders can judge how far to march their squads before deploying them by remembering that a squad deployed takes up a space of about 10 paces. C shows the company deployed as skirmishers.

straight to the front; when that squad has advanced the desired distance, the captain commands: 1. *Company,* 2. *HALT.* If the guide be *right* (*left*), the other corporals move to the *left* (*right*) front, and, in succession from the base, place their squads on the line; if the guide be center, the other corporals move to the *right* or *left* front, according as they are on the right or left of the center squad, and in succession from the center squad place their squads on the line.

If at a halt, the base squad is deployed without advancing; the other squads may be conducted to their proper places by the flank; interior squads may be moved when squads more distant from the base have gained comfortable marching distance.

207. Being in column of squads, to form skirmish line to the front: 1. *As skirmishers, guide right* (*left* or *center*), 2. *MARCH.*

If marching, the corporal of the base squad deploys it and moves straight to the front; if at a halt, he deploys his squad without advancing. If the guide be *right* (*left*), the other corporals move to the *left* (*right*) *front,* and, in succession from the base, place their squads on the line; if the guide be *center,* the corporals in front of the center squad move to the right (if at a halt, to the right rear), the corporals in rear of the center squad move to the left front, and each, in succession from the base, places his squad on the line.

The column of twos or files is deployed by the same commands and in like manner.

208. The company in line or in column of squads may be deployed in an oblique direction by the same commands. The captain points out the desired direction; the corporal of the base squad moves in the direction indicated; the other corporals conform.

209. To form skirmish line to the flank or rear the line or the column of squads is turned by squads to the flank or rear and then deployed as described.

210. The intervals between men are increased or decreased as described in the School of the Squad, adding to the preparatory command, *guide right* (*left* or *center*) if necessary.

The Assembly

211. The captain takes his post in front of, or designates, the element on which the company is to assemble and commands: 1. *Assemble,* 2. *MARCH.*

If in skirmish line the men move promptly toward the designated point and the company is reformed in line. If assembled by platoons, these are conducted to the designated point by platoon leaders, and the company is re-formed in line.

Platoons may be assembled by the command: 1. *Platoons, assemble,* 2. *MARCH.*

Executed by each platoon as described for the company.

One or more platoons may be assembled by the command: 1. *Such platoon(s), assemble,* 2. *MARCH.*

Executed by the designated platoon or platoons as described for the company.

The Advance

212. The advance of a company into an engagement (whether for attack or defense) is conducted in close order, preferably column of squads, until the probability of encountering hostile fire makes it advisable to deploy. After deployment, and before opening fire, the advance of the company may be continued in skirmish line or other suitable formation, depending upon circumstances.

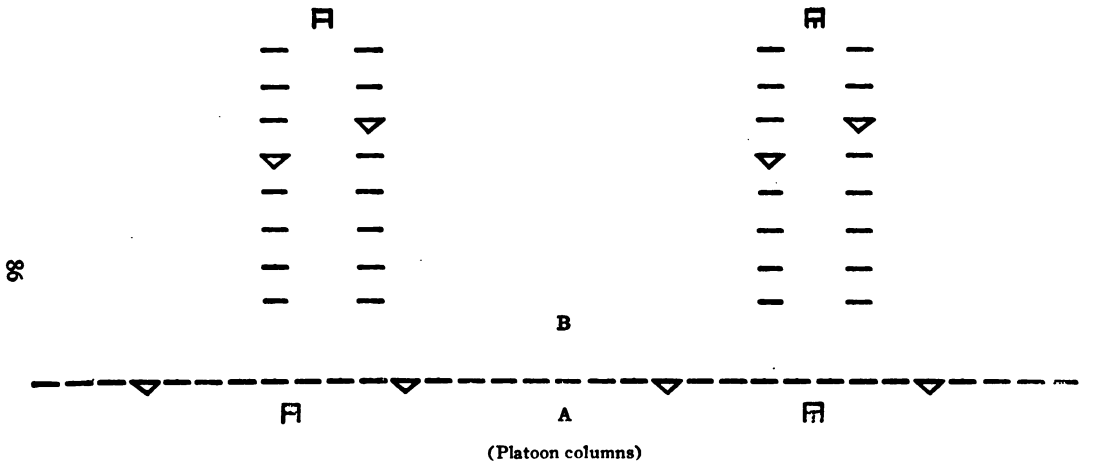


FIG. 10.—A shows two platoons of two squads each in the skirmish line. B shows both in platoon columns.

The advance may often be facilitated, or better advantage taken of cover, or losses reduced by the employment of the *platoon* or *squad columns*, or by the use of a *succession of thin lines*. The selection of the method to be used is made by the captain or major, the choice depending upon conditions arising during the progress of the advance. If the deployment is found to be premature, it will generally be best to assemble the company and proceed in close order.

Patrols are used to provide the necessary security against surprise.

213. Being in skirmish line: 1. *Platoon columns*, 2. *MARCH.*

The platoon leaders move forward through the center of their respective platoons; men to the right of the platoon leader march to the left and follow him in file; those to the left march in like manner to the right; each platoon leader thus conducts the march of his platoon in double column of files; platoon guides follow in rear of their respective platoons to insure prompt and orderly execution of the advance.

214. Being in skirmish line: 1. *Squad columns*, 2. *MARCH.*

Each squad leader moves to the front; the members of each squad oblique toward and follow their squad leader in single file at easy marching distances.

215. *Platoon columns* are profitably used where the ground is so difficult or cover so limited as to make it desirable to take advantage of the few favorable routes; no two platoons should march within the area of burst of a single shrapnel.[1] *Squad columns* are of value principally in facilitating the advance over rough or brush-

[1] Ordinarily about 20 yards wide.

FIG. 20.—A shows four squads in the skirmish line. B shows them in squad columns.

grown ground; they afford no material advantage in securing cover.

216. To deploy platoon or squad columns: 1. *As skirmishers,* 2. *MARCH.*

Skirmishers move to the right or left front and successively place themselves in their original positions on the line.

217. Being in platoon or squad columns: 1. *Assemble,* 2. *MARCH.*

The platoon or squad leaders signal *assemble.* The men of each platoon or squad, as the case may be, advance and, moving to the right and left, take their proper places in line, each unit assembling on the leading element of the column and re-forming in line. The platoon or squad leaders conduct their units toward the element or point indicated by the captain, and to their places in line; the company is re-formed in line.

218. Being in skirmish line, to advance by a succession of thin lines: 1. (*Such numbers*), *forward,* 2. *MARCH.*

The captain points out in advance the selected position in front of the line occupied. The designated number of each squad moves to the front; the line thus formed preserves the original intervals as nearly as practicable; when this line has advanced a suitable distance (generally from 100 to 250 yards, depending upon the terrain and the character of the hostile fire), a second is sent forward by similar commands, and so on at irregular distances until the whole line has advanced. Upon arriving at the indicated position, the first line is halted. Successive lines, upon arriving, halt on line with the first and the men take their proper places in the skirmish line.

Ordinarily each line is made up of one man per squad and the men of a squad are sent forward in order from right to left as deployed. The first line is led by the

platoon leader of the right platoon, the second by the guide of the right platoon, and so on in order from right to left.

The advance is conducted in quick time unless conditions demand a faster gait.

The company having arrived at the indicated position, a farther advance by the same means may be advisable.

219. The advance in a succession of thin lines is used to cross a wide stretch swept, or likely to be swept, by artillery fire or heavy, long-range rifle fire which can not profitably be returned. Its purpose is the building up of a strong skirmish line preparatory to engaging in a fire fight. This method of advancing results in serious (though temporary) loss of control over the company. Its advantage lies in the fact that it offers a less definite target, hence is less likely to draw fire.

220. The above are suggestions. Other and better formations may be devised to fit particular cases. The best formation is the one which advances the line farthest with the least loss of men, time, and control.

The Fire Attack

221. The principles governing the advance of the firing line in attack are considered in the "School of the Battalion."

When it becomes impracticable for the company to advance as a whole by ordinary means, it advances by rushes.

222. Being in skirmish line: 1. *By platoon (two platoons, squad, four men,* etc.), *from the right (left),* 2. *RUSH.*

The platoon leader on the indicated flank carefully arranges the details for a prompt and vigorous execution

of the rush and puts it into effect as soon as practicable. If necessary, he designates the leader for the indicated fraction. When about to rush, he causes the men of the fraction to cease firing and to hold themselves flat, but in readiness to spring forward instantly. The leader of the rush (at the signal of the platoon leader, if the latter be not the leader of the rush) commands: *Follow me,* and, running at top speed, leads the fraction to the new line, where he halts it and causes it to open fire. The leader of the rush selects the new line if it has not been previously designated.

The first fraction having established itself on the new line, the next like fraction is sent forward by its platoon leader, without further command of the captain, and so on, successively, until the entire company is on the line established by the first rush.

If more than one platoon is to join in one rush, the junior platoon leader conforms to the action of the senior.

A part of the line having advanced, the captain may increase or decrease the size of the fractions to complete the movement.

223. When the company forms a part of the firing line, the rush of the company as a whole is conducted by the captain, as described for a platoon in the preceding paragraph. The captain leads the rush; platoon leaders lead their respective platoons; platoon guides follow the line to insure prompt and orderly execution of the advance.

224. When the foregoing method of rushing, by running, becomes impracticable, any method of advance that *brings the attack closer to the enemy,* such as crawling, should be employed.

For regulations governing the charge, see paragraphs 318 and 319, "I. D. R."

The Company in Support

225. To enable it to follow or reach the firing line, the support adopts suitable formations, following the principles explained in paragraphs 212-218.

The support should be kept assembled as long as practicable. If after deploying a favorable opportunity arises to hold it for some time in close formation, it should be reassembled. It is redeployed when necessary.

226. The movements of the support as a whole and the dispatch of reënforcements from it to the firing line are controlled by the major.

A reënforcement of less than one platoon has little influence and will be avoided whenever practicable.

The captain of a company in support is constantly on the alert for the major's signals or commands.

227. A reënforcement sent to the firing line joins it deployed as skirmishers. The leader of the reënforcement places it in an interval in the line, if one exists, and commands it thereafter as a unit. If no such suitable interval exists, the reënforcement is advanced with increased intervals between skirmishers; each man occupies the nearest interval in the firing line, and each then obeys the orders of the nearest squad leader and platoon leader.

228. A reënforcement joins the firing line as quickly as possible without exhausting the men.

229. The original platoon division of the companies in the firing line should be maintained and should not be broken up by the mingling of reënforcements.

Upon joining the firing line, officers and sergeants accompanying a reënforcement take over the duties of others of like grade who have been disabled, or distribute themselves so as best to exercise their normal functions. Con-

ditions will vary and no rules can be prescribed. It is essential that all assist in mastering the increasing difficulties of control.

The Company Acting Alone

230. In general, the company when acting alone is employed according to the principles applicable to the battalion acting alone; the captain employs platoons as the major employs companies, making due allowance for the difference in strength.

The support may be smaller in proportion or may be dispensed with.

231. The company must be well protected against surprise. Combat patrols on the flanks are specially important. Each leader of a flank platoon details a man to watch for the signals of the patrol or patrols on his flank.

FIRE

232. Ordinarily pieces are loaded and extra ammunition is issued before the company deploys for combat.

In close order the company executes the firings at the command of the captain, who posts himself in rear of the center of the company.

Usually the firings in close order consist of saluting volleys only.

233. When the company is deployed, the men execute the firings at the command of their platoon leaders; the latter give such commands as are necessary to carry out the captain's directions, and, from time to time, add such further commands as are necessary to continue, correct, and control the fire ordered.

234. The voice is generally inadequate for giving commands during fire and must be replaced by signals of such

character that proper fire direction and control is assured. To attract attention, signals must usually be preceded by the whistle signal (short blast). A fraction of the firing line about to rush should, if practicable, avoid using the long blast signal as an aid to *cease firing*. Officers and men behind the firing line can not ordinarily move freely along the line, but must depend on mutual watchfulness and the proper use of the prescribed signals. All should post themselves so as to see their immediate superiors and subordinates.

235. The musicians assist the captain by observing the enemy, the target, and the fire effect, by transmitting commands or signals, and by watching for signals.

236. Firing with blank cartridges at an *outlined* or *represented* enemy at distances of less than 100 yards is prohibited.

237. The effect of fire and the influence of the ground in relation thereto, and the individual and collective instruction in marksmanship, are treated in the "Small-Arms Firing Manual."

Ranges

238. For convenience of reference ranges are classified as follows:

0 to 600 yards, close range.
600 to 1,200 yards, effective range.
1,200 to 2,000 yards, long range.
2,000 yards and over, distant range.

239. The distance to the target must be determined as accurately as possible and the sights set accordingly. Aside from training and morale, this is the most important single factor in securing effective fire at the longer ranges.

240. Except in a deliberately prepared defensive position, the most accurate and only practicable method of determining the range will generally be to take the mean of several estimates.

Five or six officers or men, selected from the most accurate estimators in the company, are designated as *range estimators* and are specially trained in estimating distances.

Whenever necessary and practicable, the captain assembles the range estimators, points out the target to them, and adopts the mean of their estimates. The range estimators then take their customary posts.

Classes of Firing

241. *Volley firing* has limited application. In defense it may be used in the early stages of the action if the enemy presents a large, compact target. It may be used by troops executing *fire of position.* When the ground near the target is such that the strike of bullets can be seen from the firing line, *ranging volleys* may be used to correct the sight setting.

In combat, volley firing is executed habitually by platoon.

242. *Fire at will* is the class of fire normally employed in attack or defense.

243. *Clip fire* has limited application. It is principally used: 1. In the early stages of combat, to steady the men by habituating them to brief pauses in firing. 2. To produce a short burst of fire.

The Target

244. Ordinarily the major will assign to the company an objective in attack or sector in defense; the company's

target will lie within the limits so assigned. In the choice of target, tactical considerations are paramount; the nearest hostile troops within the objective or sector will thus be the usual target. This will ordinarily be the hostile firing line; troops in rear are ordinarily proper targets for artillery, machine guns, or, at times, infantry employing fire of position.

Change of target should not be made without excellent reasons therefor, such as the sudden appearance of hostile troops under conditions which make them more to be feared than the troops comprising the former target.

245. The distribution of fire over the entire target is of special importance.

The captain allots a part of the target to each platoon, or each platoon leader takes as his target that part which corresponds to his position in the company. Men are so instructed that each fires on that part of the target which is directly opposite him.

246. All parts of the target are equally important. Care must be exercised that the men do not slight its less visible parts. A section of the target not covered by fire represents a number of the enemy permitted to fire coolly and effectively.

247. If the target can not be seen with the naked eye, platoon leaders select an object in front of or behind it, designate this as the *aiming target*, and direct a sight setting which will carry the cone of fire into the target.

Fire Direction

248. When the company is large enough to be divided into platoons, it is impracticable for the captain to command it directly in combat. His efficiency in managing the firing line is measured by his ability to enforce his

will through the platoon leaders. Having indicated clearly what he desires them to do, he avoids interfering except to correct serious errors or omissions.

249. The captain *directs* the fire of the company or of designated platoons. He designates the target, and, when practicable, allots a part of the target to each platoon. Before beginning the fire action he determines the range, announces the sight setting, and indicates the class of fire to be employed and the time to open fire. Thereafter, he observes the fire effect, corrects material errors in sight setting, prevents exhaustion of the ammunition supply, and causes the distribution of such extra ammunition as may be received from the rear.

Fire Control

250. In combat the platoon is the *fire unit*. From 20 to 35 rifles are as many as one leader can control effectively.

251. Each platoon leader puts into execution the commands or directions of the captain, having first taken such precautions to insure correct sight setting and clear description of the target or aiming target as the situation permits or requires; thereafter, he gives such additional commands or directions as are necessary to exact compliance with the captain's will. He corrects the sight setting when necessary. He designates an aiming target when the target can not be seen with the naked eye.

252. In general, *platoon leaders* observe the target and the effect of their fire and are on the alert for the captain's commands or signals; they observe and regulate the rate of fire. The *platoon guides* watch the firing line and check every breach of fire discipline. *Squad leaders* transmit commands and signals when necessary, observe the conduct of their squads and abate excitement, assist

in enforcing fire discipline and participate in the firing.

253. The best troops are those that submit longest to fire control. Loss of control is an evil which robs success of its greatest results. To avoid or delay such loss should be the constant aim of all.

Fire control implies the ability to stop firing, change the sight setting and target, and resume a well-directed fire.

Fire Discipline

254. "Fire discipline implies, besides a habit of obedience, a control of the rifle by the soldier, the result of training, which will enable him in action to make hits instead of misses. It embraces taking advantage of the ground; care in setting the sight and delivery of fire; constant attention to the orders of the leaders, and careful observation of the enemy; an increase of fire when the target is favorable, and a cessation of fire when the enemy disappears; economy of ammunition." ("Small-Arms Firing Manual.")

In combat, shots which graze the enemy's trench or position and thus reduce the effectiveness of his fire have the approximate value of hits; such shots only, or actual hits, contribute toward fire superiority.

Fire discipline implies that, in a firing line without leaders, each man retains his presence of mind and directs effective fire upon the proper target.

255. To create a correct appreciation of the requirements of fire discipline, men are taught that the rate of fire should be as rapid as is consistent with accurate aiming; that the rate will depend upon the visibility, proximity, and size of the target; and that the proper rate will ordinarily suggest itself to each trained man, usually rendering cautions or commands unnecessary.

In attack the highest rate of fire is employed at the halt preceding the assault, and in pursuing fire.

256. In an advance by rushes, leaders of troops in firing positions are responsible for the delivery of heavy fire to cover the advance of each rushing fraction. Troops are trained to change slightly the direction of fire so as not to endanger the flanks of advanced portions of the firing line.

257. In defense, when the target disappears behind cover, platoon leaders suspend fire, prepare their platoons to fire upon the point where it is expected to reappear, and greet its reappearance instantly with vigorous fire.

In preparing for the *firing line* it is the big *things* that count. Don't *quibble over little things. It is action with head work that will win the scrap.*

CHAPTER VII

INSPECTIONS AND MUSTER

Company Inspection

745. Being in line at a halt: 1. *Open ranks.* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march* the front rank executes right dress; the rear rank and the file closers march backward 4 steps, halt and execute right dress; the lieutenants pass around their respective flanks and take post, facing to the front, 3 paces in front of the center of their respective platoons. The captain aligns the front rank, rear rank, and file closers, takes post 3 paces in front of the right guide, facing to the left, and commands: 1. *FRONT,* 2. *PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*

At the second command the lieutenants carry saber; the captain returns saber and inspects them, after which they face about, order saber, and stand at ease; upon the completion of the inspection they carry saber, face about, and order saber. The captain may direct the lieutenants to accompany or assist him, in which case they return saber and, at the close of the inspection, resume their posts in front of the company, draw and carry saber.

Having inspected the lieutenants, the captain proceeds to the right of the company. Each man, as the captain approaches him, executes *inspection arms.*

The captain takes the piece, grasping it with his right hand just above the rear sight, the man dropping his hands. The captain inspects the piece, and, with the

hand and piece in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance and executes *order arms.*

As the captain returns the piece the next man executes *inspection arms,* and so on through the company.

Should the piece be inspected without handling, each man executes *order arms* as soon as the captain passes to the next man.

The inspection is from right tc left in front, and from left to right in rear, of each rank and of the line of file closers.

When approached by the captain the first sergeant executes *inspection saber.* Enlisted men armed with the pistol execute *inspection pistol* by drawing the pistol from the holster and holding it diagonally across the body, barrel up, and 6 inches in front of the neck, muzzle pointing up and to the left. The pistol is returned to the holster as soon as the captain passes.

Upon completion of the inspection the captain takes post facing to the left in front of the right guide and on line with the lieutenants and commands: 1. *Close ranks,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march* the lieutenants resume their posts in line; the rear rank closes to 40 inches, each man covering his file leader; the file closers close to 2 paces from the rear rank.

746. If the company is dismissed, rifles are put away. In quarters, headdress and accouterments are removed and the men stand near their respective bunks; in camp they stand covered, but without accouterments, in front of their tents.

If the personal field equipment has not been inspected in ranks and its inspection in quarters or camp is ordered, each man will arrange the prescribed articles on

his bunk, if in quarters or permanent camp, or in front of his half of the tent, if in shelter tent camp, in the same relative order as directed in paragraph 747.

The captain, accompanied by the lieutenants, then inspects the quarters or camp. The first sergeant precedes the captain and calls the men to attention on entering each squad room or on approaching the tents; the men stand at attention but do not salute.

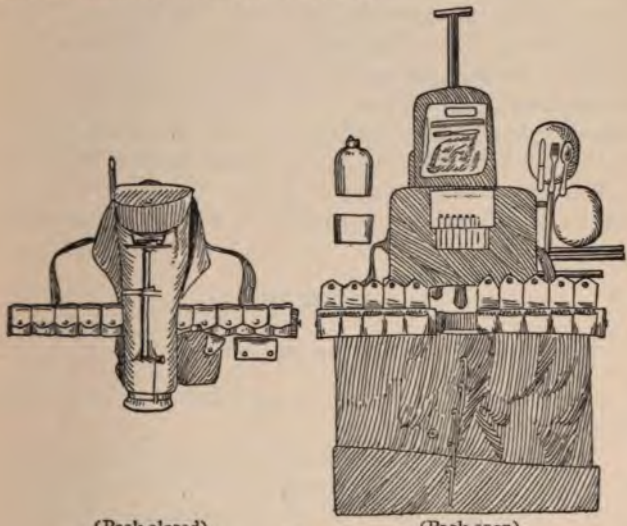
747. If the inspection is to include an examination of the equipment while in ranks, the captain, after closing ranks, causes the company to stack arms, to march backward until 4 paces in rear of the stacks and to take intervals. He then commands: 1. *UNSLING EQUIPMENT.* 2. *OPEN PACKS.*

At the first command, each man unslings his equipment and places it on the ground at his feet, haversack to the front end of the pack 1 foot in front of toes.

At the second command, pack carriers are unstrapped, packs removed and unrolled, the longer edge of the pack along the lower edge of the cartridge belt. Each man exposes shelter tent pins, removes meat can, knife, fork, and spoon from the meat-can pouch, and places them on the right of the haversack, knife, fork, and spoon in the open meat can; removes the canteen and cup from the cover and places them on the left side of the haversack; unstraps and spreads out haversack so as to expose its contents; folds up the carrier to uncover the cartridge pockets; opens same; unrolls toilet articles and places them on the outer flap of the haversack; places underwear carried in pack on the left half of the open pack, with round fold parallel with front edge of pack; opens first-aid pouch and exposes contents to view. Special articles carried by individual men, such as flag kit, field glasses, compass, steel tape, notebook, etc., will be

arranged on the right half of the open pack. Each man then resumes the attention. Figure 21 shows the relative position of all articles except underwear and special articles.

The captain then passes along the ranks and file closers as before, inspects the equipment, returns to the right, and commands: *CLOSE PACKS.*



(Pack closed) (Pack open)

FIG. 21.

Each man rolls up his toilet articles and underwear, straps up his haversack and its contents, replaces the meat can, knife, fork, and spoon, and the canteen and cup; closes cartridge pockets and first-aid pouch; restores special articles to their proper receptacles; rolls up and replaces pack in carrier; and, leaving the equipment in its position on the ground, resumes the attention.

All equipments being packed, the captain commands: *SLING EQUIPMENT.*

The equipments are slung and belts fastened.

The captain then causes the company to assemble and take arms. The inspection is completed as already explained.

748. Should the inspector be other than the captain, the latter, after commanding *front,* adds *REST,* and faces to the front. When the inspector approaches, the captain faces to the left, brings the company to attention, faces to the front, and salutes. The salute acknowledged, the captain carries saber, faces to the left, commands: *PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,* and again faces to the front.

The inspection proceeds as before; the captain returns saber and accompanies the inspector as soon as the latter passes him.

MUSTER

Company Muster

755. Muster is preceded by an inspection, and, when practicable, by a review.

The adjutant is provided with the muster roll of the field, staff, and band, the surgeon with the hospital roll; each captain with the roll of his company. A list of absentees, alphabetically arranged, showing cause and place of absence, accompanies each roll.

756. Being in column of companies at open ranks, each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, brings his company to right shoulder arms, and commands: *ATTENTION TO MUSTER.*

The mustering officer or captain then calls the names on the roll; each man, as his name is called, answers *Here* and brings his piece to order arms.

After muster, the mustering officer, accompanied by the company commanders and such other officers as he may designate, verifies the presence of the men reported in hospital, on guard, etc.

757. A company may be mustered in the same manner on its own parade ground, the muster to follow the company inspection.

CHAPTER VIII

HONORS AND SALUTES

758. Further rules governing honors, courtesies, etc., are prescribed in "Army Regulations."

759. (1) Salutes shall be exchanged between officers and enlisted men not in a military formation, nor at drill, work, games, or mess, on every occasion of their meeting, passing near or being addressed, the officer junior in rank or the enlisted man saluting first.

(2) When an officer enters a room where there are several enlisted men, the word "attention" is given by some one who perceives him, when all rise, uncover, and remain standing at attention until the officer leaves the room or directs otherwise. Enlisted men at meals stop eating and remain seated at attention.

(3) An enlisted man, if seated, rises on the approach of an officer, faces toward him, stands at attention, and salutes. Standing, he faces an officer for the same purpose. If the parties remain in the same place or on the same ground, such compliments need not be repeated. Soldiers actually at work do not cease work to salute an officer unless addressed by him.

(4) Before addressing an officer, an enlisted man makes the prescribed salute with the weapon with which he is armed, or, if unarmed, with the right hand. He also makes the same salute after receiving a reply.

(5) In uniform, covered or uncovered, but not in formation, officers and enlisted men salute military per-

sons as follows: With arms in hand, the salute prescribed for that arm (sentinels on interior guard duty excepted); without arms, the right-hand salute.

(6) In civilian dress, covered or uncovered, officers and enlisted men salute military persons with the right-hand salute.

(7) Officers and enlisted men will render the prescribed salutes in a military manner, the officer junior in rank, or the enlisted men, saluting first. When several officers in company are saluted, all entitled to the salute shall return it.

(8) Except in the field under campaign or simulated campaign conditions, a mounted officer (or soldier) dismounts before addressing a superior officer not mounted.

(9) A man in formation should not salute when directly addressed, but shall come to attention if at rest or at ease.

(10) Saluting distance is that within which recognition is easy. In general, it does not exceed 30 paces.

(11) When an officer entitled to the salute passes in rear of a body of troops, it is brought to attention while he is opposite the post of the commander.

(12) In public conveyances, such as railway trains and street cars, and in public places, such as theaters, honors and personal salutes may be omitted when palpably inappropriate or apt to disturb or annoy civilians present.

(13) Soldiers at all times and in all situations pay the same compliments to officers of the Army, Navy, Marine Corps, and to officers of the National Guard Reserve as to officers of their own regiment, corps, or arm of service.

(14) Sentinels on post doing interior guard duty conform to the foregoing principles, but salute by present-

ing arms when armed with the rifle. They will not salute if it interferes with the proper performance of their duties. Troops under arms will salute as prescribed in drill regulations.

760. (1) Commanders of detachments or other commands will salute officers of grades higher than the person commanding the unit, by first bringing the unit to attention and then saluting as required by subparagraph (5), paragraph 759. If the person saluted is of a junior or equal grade, the unit need not be at attention in the exchange of salutes.

(2) If two detachments or other commands meet, their commanders will exchange salutes, both commands being at attention.

761. Salutes and honors, as a rule, are not paid by troops actually engaged in drill, on the march, or in the field under campaign or simulated campaign conditions. Troops on the service of security pay no compliments whatever.

762. If the command is in line at a halt (not in the field) and armed with the rifle, or with sabers drawn, it shall be brought to *present arms* or *present sabers* before its commander salutes, in the following cases: When the National Anthem is played, or when To the color or To the standard is sounded during ceremonies, or when a person is saluted who is its immediate or higher commander or a general officer, or when the national or regimental color is saluted.

763. At parades and other ceremonies, under arms, the command shall render the prescribed salute and shall remain in the position of salute while the National Anthem is being played; also at retreat and during ceremonies when To the color is played, if no band is present. If not under arms, the organizations should be

brought to attention at the first note of the National Anthem, To the color or To the standard, and the salute rendered by the officer or noncommissioned officer in command as prescribed in regulations, as amended herein.

764. Whenever the National Anthem is played at any place when persons belonging to the military service are present, all officers and enlisted men not in formation shall stand at attention facing toward the music (except at retreat, when they shall face toward the flag). If in uniform, covered or uncovered, or in civilian clothes, uncovered, they shall salute at the first note of the anthem, retaining the position of a salute until the last note of the anthem. If not in uniform and covered, they shall uncover at the first note of the anthem, holding the headdress opposite the left shoulder and so remain until its close, except that in inclement weather the headdress may be slightly raised.

The same rules apply when To the color or To the standard is sounded as when the National Anthem is played.

When played by an Army band, the National Anthem shall be played through without repetition of any part not required to be repeated to make it complete.

The same marks of respect prescribed for observance during the playing of the National Anthem of the United States shall be shown toward the national anthem of any other country when played upon official occasions.

765. Officers and enlisted men passing the uncased color will render honors as follows: If in uniform, they will salute as required by subparagraph (5), paragraph 759; if in civilian dress and covered, they will uncover, holding the headdress opposite the left shoulder with the right hand; if uncovered they will salute with the right-hand salute.

CHAPTER IX

THE COLOR

766. The word "color" implies the national color; it includes the regimental color when both are present.

The rules prescribing the colors to be carried by regiments and battalions on all occasions are contained in "Army Regulations."

767. In garrison the colors, when not in use, are kept in the office or quarters of the colonel, and are escorted thereto and therefrom by the color guard. In camp the colors, when not in use, are in front of the colonel's tent. From reveille to retreat, when the weather permits, they are displayed uncased; from retreat to reveille and during inclement weather they are cased.

Colors are said to be cased when furled and protected by the oil-cloth covering.

768. The regimental color salutes in the ceremony of escort of the color, and when saluting an officer entitled to the honor, but in no other case.

If marching, the salute is executed when at 6 paces from the officer entitled to the salute; the carry is resumed when 6 paces beyond him.

The national color renders no salute.

The Color Guard

769. The color guard consists of two color sergeants, who are the color bearers, and two experienced privates

selected by the colonel. The senior color sergeant carries the national color; the junior color sergeant carries the regimental color. The regimental color, when carried, is always on the left of the national color, in whatever direction they may face.

770. The color guard is formed and marched in one rank, the color bearers in the center. It is marched in the same manner and by the same commands as a squad, substituting, when necessary, *guard* for *squad*.

771. The color company is the center or right center company of the center or right center battalion. The color guard remains with that company unless otherwise directed.

772. In line the color guard is in the interval between the inner guides of the right and left center companies.

In line of columns or in close line, the color guard is midway between the right and left center companies and on line with the captains.

In column of companies or platoons the color guard is midway between the color company and the company in rear of the color company and equidistant from the flanks of the column.

In close column the color guard is on the flank of the color company.

In column of squads the color guard is in the column between the color company and the company originally on its left.

When the regiment is formed in line of masses for ceremonies, the color guard forms on the left of the leading company of the center (right center) battalion. It rejoins the color company when the regiment changes from line of masses.

773. The color guard, when with a battalion that takes the battle formation, joins the regimental reserve, whose

commander directs the color guard to join a certain company of the reserve.

774. The color guard executes neither loadings nor firings; in rendering honors, it executes all movements in the manual; in drill, all movements unless specially excused.

To Receive the Color

775. The color guard, by command of the senior color sergeant, presents arms on receiving and parting with the color. After parting with the color, the color guard is brought to order arms by command of the senior member who is placed as the right man of the guard.

776. At drills and ceremonies, excepting escort of the color, the color, if present, is received by the color company after its formation.

The formation of the color company completed, the captain faces to the front; the color guard, conducted by the senior sergeant, approaches from the front and halts at a distance of 10 paces from the captain, who then faces about, brings the company to the present, faces to the front, salutes, again faces about and brings the company to the order. The color guard comes to the present and order at the command of the captain, and is then marched by the color sergeant directly to its post on the left of the color company.

777. When the battalion is dismissed the color guard escorts the color to the office or quarters of the colonel.

Manual of the Color

778. At the *carry* the heel of the pike rests in the socket of the sling; the right hand grasps the pike at the height of the shoulder.

At the *order* the heel of the pike rests on the ground near the right toe, the right hand holding the pike in a vertical position.

At *parade rest* the heel of the pike is on the ground, as at the *order;* the pike is held with both hands in front of the center of the body, left hand uppermost.

The *order* is resumed at the command *attention.*

The left hand assists the right when necessary.

The *carry* is the habitual position when the troops are at a shoulder, port, or trail.

The *order* and *parade rest* are executed with the troops.

The color salute: Being at a carry, slip the right hand up the pike to the height of the eye, then lower the pike by straightening the arm to the front.

CHAPTER X

TENT PITCHING

Shelter Tents

792. Being in line or in column of platoons, the captain commands: *FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.*

The officers, first sergeant, and guides fall out; the cooks form a file on the flank of the company nearest the kitchen, the first sergeant and right guide fall in, forming the right file of the company; blank files are filled by the file closers or by men taken from the front rank; the remaining guide, or guides and file closers form on a convenient flank. Before forming column of platoons, preparatory to pitching tents, the company may be redivided into two or more platoons, regardless of the size of each.

793. The captain then causes the company to take intervals as described in the "School of the Squad," and commands: *PITCH TENTS.*

At the command *pitch tents*, each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot and lays his rifle on the ground, the butt of the rifle near the toe of the right foot, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, and steps back into his place; each front-rank man then draws his bayonet and sticks it in the ground by the outside of the right heel.

Equipments are unslung, packs opened, shelter half and pins removed; each man then spreads his shelter half,

small triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, the rear-rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together; the guy loops at both ends of the lower half are passed through button-holes provided in lower and upper halves; the whipped end of the guy rope is then passed through both guy loops and secured, this at both ends of the tent. Each front-rank man inserts the muzzle of his rifle under the front end of the ridge and holds the rifle upright, sling to the front, heel of butt on the ground beside the bayonet. His rear-rank man pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of bayonets, stretching the tent taut; he then inserts a pin in the eye of the front guy rope and drives the pin at such a distance in front of the rifle as to hold the rope taut; both men go to the rear of the tent, each pins down a corner, stretching the sides and rear of the tent before securing; the rear-rank man then inserts an intrenching tool, or a bayonet in its scabbard, under the rear end of the ridge inside the tent, the front-rank man pegging down the end of the rear guy ropes; the rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear-rank man working on the right.

The front flaps of the tent are not fastened down, but are thrown back on the tent.

As soon as the tent is pitched each man arranges his equipment and the contents of his pack in the tent and stands at attention in front of his own half on the line with the front guy-rope pin.

To have a uniform slope when the tents are pitched, the guy ropes should all be of the same length.

In shelter-tent camps, in localities where suitable material is procurable, tent poles may be improvised and used in lieu of the rifle and bayonet or intrenching tool as supports for the shelter tent.

794. When the pack is not carried the company is formed for shelter tents, intervals are taken, arms are laid aside or on the ground, the men are dismissed and proceed to the wagon, secure their packs, return to their places, and pitch tents as heretofore described.

795. Double shelter tents may be pitched by first pitching one tent as heretofore described, then pitching a second tent against the opening of the first, using one rifle to support both tents, and passing the front guy ropes over and down the sides of the opposite tents. The front corner of one tent is not pegged down, but is thrown back to permit an opening into the tent.

Single Sleeping Bag

796. Spread the poncho on the ground, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the left; fold the blanket once across its short dimension and lay it on the poncho, folded side along the right side of the poncho; tie the blanket together along the left side by means of the tapes provided; fold the left half of the poncho over the blanket and button it together along the side and bottom.

Double Sleeping Bag

797. Spread one poncho on the ground, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the left; spread the blankets on top of the poncho; tie the edges of the blankets together with the tapes provided, spread a second poncho on top of the blankets, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the right; button the two ponchos together along both sides and across the end.

To Strike Shelter Tents

798. The men standing in front of their tents: *STRIKE TENTS.*

Equipments and rifles are removed from the tent; the tents are lowered, packs made up, and equipments slung, and the men stand at attention in the places originally occupied after taking intervals.

To Pitch Tents

799. To pitch all types of army tents, except shelter and conical wall tents: Mark line of tents by driving a wall pin on the spot to be occupied by the right (or left) corner of each tent. For pyramidal tents the interval between adjacent pins should be about 30 feet, which will give a passage of two feet between tents. Spread tripod on the ground where the center of tent is to be, if tripod is used. Spread the tent on the ground to be occupied, door to the front, and place the right (or left) front wall loop over the pin. The door (or doors if more than one) being fastened and held together at the bottom, the left (or right) corner wall loop is carried to the left (or right) as far as it will go and a wall pin driven through it, the pin being placed in line with the right (or left) corner pins already driven. At the same time the rear corner wall loops are pulled to the rear and outward so that the rear wall of the tent is stretched to complete the rectangle. Wall pins are then driven through these loops. Each corner pin should be directly in rear of the corresponding front corner pin, making a rectangle. Unless the canvas be wet, a small amount of slack should be allowed before the corner pins are driven. According to the size of the tent one or two men, crawling under the tent if necessary, fit each pole or ridge or upright into the ring or ridge pole holes, and such accessories as hood, fly and brace ropes are adjust[illegible] an

additional man will go under the tent to adjust it. The tent, steadied by the remaining men, one at each corner guy rope, will then be raised. If the tent is a ward or storage type, corner poles will now be placed at the four corners. The four corner guy ropes are then placed over the lower notches of the large pins driven in prolongation of the diagonals at such distance as to hold the walls and ends of the tent vertical and smooth when the guy ropes are drawn taut. A wall pin is then driven through each remaining wall loop and a large pin for each guy rope is driven in line with the corner guy pins already driven. The guy ropes of the tent are placed over the lower notches, while the guy ropes of the fly are placed over the upper notches, and are then drawn taut. Brace ropes, when used, are then secured to stakes or pins suitably placed.

800. Rescinded.

Conical Wall Tent

801. Drive the door pin and center pin 8 feet 3 inches apart. Using the hood lines with center pin as center, describe two concentric circles with radii 8 feet 3 inches and 11 feet 3 inches. In the outer circle drive two door guy pins 3 feet apart. At intervals of about 3 feet drive the other guy pin.

In other respects conical tents are erected practically as in the case of pyramidal tents.

To Strike Common, Wall, Pyramidal, and Conical Wall Tents

802. *STRIKE TENTS.*

The men first remove all pins except those of the four corner guy ropes, or the four quadrant guy ropes in the

case of the conical wall tent. The pins are neatly piled or placed in their receptacle.

One man holds each guy, and when the ground is clear the tent is lowered, folded, or rolled and tied, the poles or tripod and pole fastened together, and the remaining pins collected.

To Fold Tents

803. For folding common, wall, hospital, and storage tents: Spread the tent flat on the ground, folded at the ridge so that bottoms of side walls are even, ends of tent forming triangles to the right and left; fold the triangular ends of the tent in toward the middle, making it rectangular in shape; fold the top over about 9 inches; fold the tent in two by carrying the top fold over clear to the foot; fold again in two from the top to the foot; throw all guys on tent except the second from each end; fold the ends in so as to cover about two-thirds of the second cloths; fold the left end over to meet the turned-in edge of the right end, then fold the right end over the top, completing the bundle; tie with the two exposed guys.

Method of Folding Pyramidal Tent

The tent is thrown toward the rear and the back wall and roof canvas pulled out smooth. This may be most easily accomplished by leaving the rear-corner wall pins in the ground with the wall loops attached, one man at each rear-corner guy, and one holding the square iron in a perpendicular position and pulling the canvas to its limit away from the former front of the tent. This leaves the three remaining sides of the tent on top of the rear side, with the

Now carry the right-front corner over and lay it on the left-rear corner. Pull all canvas smooth, throw guys toward square iron, and put bottom edges even. Then take the right-front corner and return to the right, covering the right-rear corner. This folds the right side of the tent on itself, with the crease in the middle and under the front side of tent.

Next carry the left-front corner to the right and back as described above; this when completed will leave the front and rear sides of the tent lying smooth and flat and the two side walls folded inward, each on itself.

Place the hood in the square iron which has been folded downward toward the bottom of tent, and continue to fold around the square iron as a core, pressing all folds down flat and smooth, and parallel with the bottom of the tent. If each fold is compactly made and the canvas kept smooth, the last fold will exactly cover the lower edge of the canvas. Lay all exposed guys along the folded canvas except the two on the center width, which should be pulled out and away from bottom edge to their extreme length for tying. Now, beginning at one end, fold toward the center on first seam (that joining first and second widths) and fold again toward the center so that the already folded canvas will come to within about 3 inches of the middle width. Then fold over to opposite edge of middle width of canvas. Then begin folding from opposite end, folding the first width in half, then making a second fold to come within about 4 or 5 inches of that already folded; turn this fold entirely over that already folded. Take the exposed guys and draw them taut across each other; turn bundle over on the under guy; cross guys on top of bundle, drawing tight. Turn bundle over the crossed guys and tie lengthwise.

When properly tied and pressed together this will make a package 11 by 23 by 34 inches, requiring about 8,855 cubic inches to store or pack.

Stencil the organization designation on the lower half of the middle width of canvas in the back wall.

CHAPTER XI

SIGNALS AND SIGNALING

Arm Signals

43. The following arm signals are prescribed. In making signals either arm may be used. Officers who receive signals on the firing line "repeat back" at once to prevent misunderstanding.

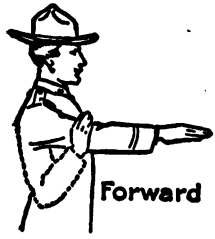


FIG. 22

Forward, march. Carry the hand to the shoulder; straighten and hold the arm horizontally, thrusting it in direction of march.

This signal is also used to execute quick time from double time.

Halt. Carry the hand to the shoulder; thrust the hand upward and hold the arm vertically.

Double time, march. Carry the hand to the shoulder; rapidly thrust the hand upward the full extent of the arm several times.

FIG. 23

Squads right, march. Raise the arm laterally until horizontal; carry it to a vertical position above the head and swing it several times between the vertical and horizontal positions.

Squads left, march. Raise the arm laterally until horizontal, carry it downward to the side and swing it several times between the downward and horizontal positions.

FIG. 24

FIG. 25

Squads right about, march (if in close order) or, *To the rear, march* (if in skirmish line). Extend the arm vertically above the head; carry it laterally downward to the side and swing it several times between the vertical and downward positions.

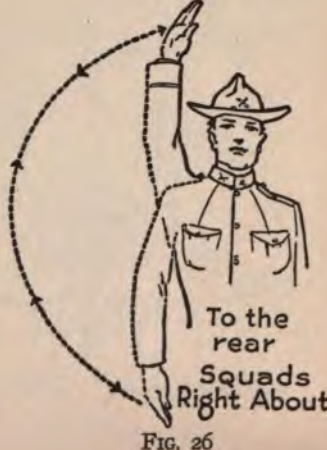


FIG. 26

FIG. 27

Change direction or *Column right (left), march.* The hand on the side toward which the change of direction is to be made is carried across the body to the opposite shoulder, forearm horizontal; then swing in a horizontal plane, arm extended, pointing in the new direction.

As skirmishers, march. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal.

FIG. 28

FIG. 29

As skirmishers, guide center, march, Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; swing both simultaneously upward until vertical and return to the horizontal; repeat several times.

As skirmishers, guide right (left), march. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; hold the arm on the side of the guide steadily in the horizontal position; swing the other upward until vertical and return it to the horizontal· repeat several times.

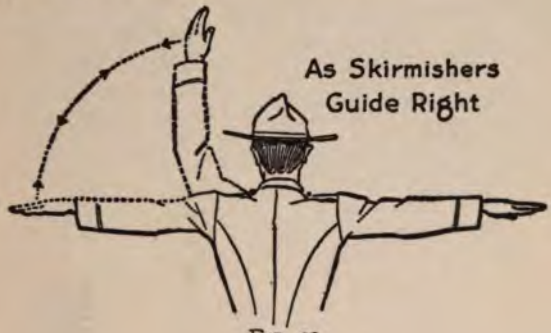


FIG. 30

Assemble, march. Raise the arm vertically to its full extent and describe horizontal circles.

Range, or *Change Elevation.* To announce *range,* extend the arm toward the leaders or men for whom the signal is intended, fist closed; by keeping the fist closed battle sight is indicated; by opening and closing the fist, expose thumb and fingers to a number equal to the hundreds of yards;

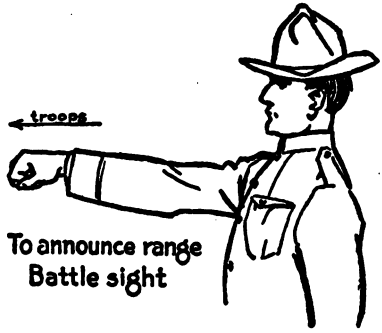


FIG. 32

to add 50 yards describe a short horizontal line with forefinger. *To change elevation,* indicate the *amount of increase* or *decrease* by fingers as above; point upward to indicate increase and downward to indicate decrease.

What range are you using? or *What is the range?* Extend the arms toward the person addressed, one hand open, palm to the front, resting on the other hand, fist closed.

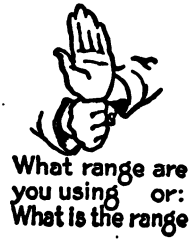


FIG. 33

FIG. 34

Are you ready? or *I am ready.* Raise the hand, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the person addressed.

Commence firing. Move the arm extended in full length, hand palm down, several times through a horizontal arc in front of the body.

Fire faster. Execute rapidly the signal "Commence firing."

Fire slower. Execute slowly the signal "Commence firing."

To swing the cone of fire to the right, or *left.* Extend the arm in full length to the front, palm to the right (left); swing the arm to the right (left), and point in the direction of the new target.

FIG. 35

Fix bayonet. Simulate hand in "Fix bayonet."

FIG. 36

Fix Bayonet. Simulate the movement of the right hand in "Fix bayonet" (paragraph 95).

FIG. 37

Suspend firing. Raise and hold the forearm steadily in a horizontal position in front of the forehead, palm of the hand to the front.

Cease firing. Raise the forearm as in *suspend firing* and swing it up and down several times in front of the face.

Platoon. Extend the arm horizontally toward the platoon leader; describe small circles with the hand. (See par. 44.)

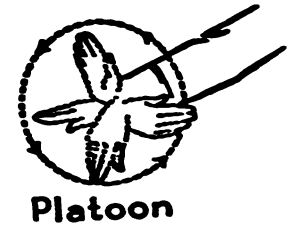


FIG. 38

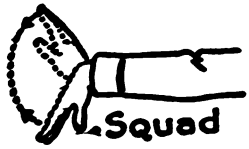


FIG. 39

Squad. Extend the arm horizontally toward the platoon leader; swing the hand up and down from the wrist. (See par. 44.)

Rush. Same as *double time.*

44. The signals *platoon* and *squad* are intended primarily for communication between the captain and his platoon leaders. The signal *platoon* or *squad* indic-

that the platoon commander is to cause the signal which follows to be executed by platoon or squad.

Whistle. One short blast means attention to orders; one long blast of the whistle means cease firing.

SIGNALS AND CODES

General Service Code. (International Morse Code)

A . —	N — .
B — . . .	O — — —
C — . — .	P . — — .
D — . .	Q — — . —
E .	R . — .
F . . — .	S . . .
G — — .	T —
H	U . . —
I . .	V . . . —
J . — — —	W . — —
K — . —	X — . . —
L . — . .	Y — . — —
M — —	Z — — — . .

Numerals

1 . — — — —	6 — . . . .
2 . . — — —	7 — — . . .
3 . . . — —	8 — — — . .
4 . . . . —	9 — — — — .
5	0 — — — — —

Punctuation

Period ....
Comma ..... . — . — . —
Interrogation .... — — . .

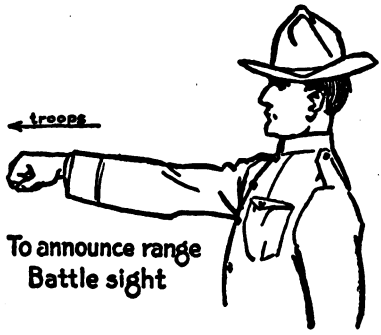


FIG. 32

to add 50 yards describe a short horizontal line with forefinger. *To change elevation,* indicate the *amount of increase* or *decrease* by fingers as above; point upward to indicate increase and downward to indicate decrease.

What range are you using? or *What is the range?* Extend the arms toward the person addressed, one hand open, palm to the front, resting on the other hand, fist closed.

FIG. 33

FIG. 34

Are you ready? or *I am ready.* Raise the hand, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the person addressed.

The More Important Conventional Flag Signals

For communication between the firing line and the reserve or commander in rear. In transmission, their concealment from the enemy's view should be insured. In the absence of signal flags the headdress or other substitute may be used.

Letter of alphabet	If signaled from the rear to the firing line	If signaled from the firing line to the rear
A D F.....	Ammunition going forward	Ammunition required.
C C C.....	Charge (mandatory at all times)	Am about to charge if no instructions to the contrary.
C F.....	Cease firing	Cease firing.
D T.....	Double time or "rush"	Double time or "rush."
F.....	Commence firing	Commence firing.
F B.....	Fix bayonets	Fix bayonets.
F L.....	Artillery fire is causing us losses	Artillery fire is causing us losses.
G	Move forward	Preparing to move forward.
H H H.....	Halt	Halt.
K	Negative	Negative.
L T.....	Left	Left.
O	What is the (R N, etc.)? Interrogatory	What is the (R N, etc.)? Interrogatory.
(Ardois x semaphore only.)		
- - — — - - (All methods but ardois and semaphore.)	What is the (R N, etc.)? Interrogatory	What is the (R N, etc.)? Interrogatory.
P	Affirmative	Affirmative.
P	Acknowledgment	Acknowledgment.
R N.....	Range	Range.
R T.....	Right	Right.
S S S.....	Support going forward	Support needed.
S U F.....	Suspend firing	Suspend firing.
T	Target	Target.

THE TWO-ARM SEMAPHORE CODE.

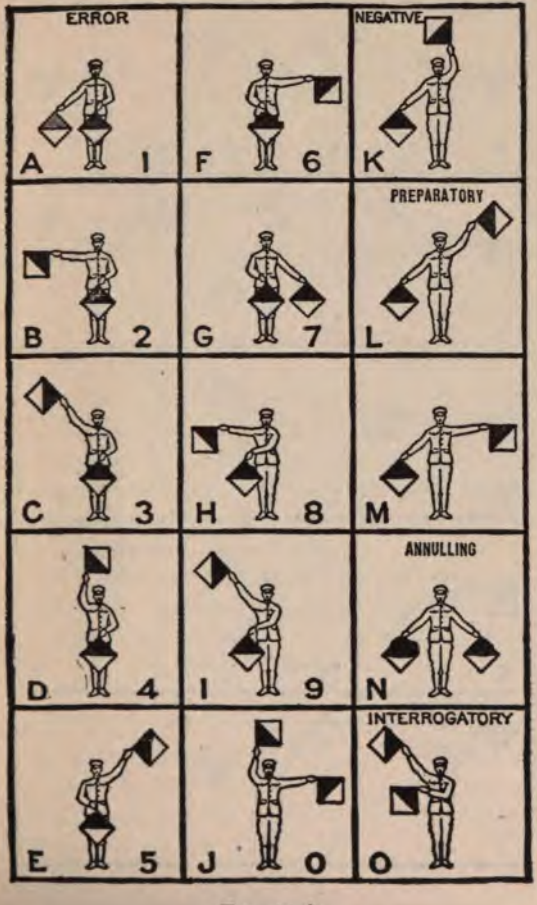


FIG. 40-A

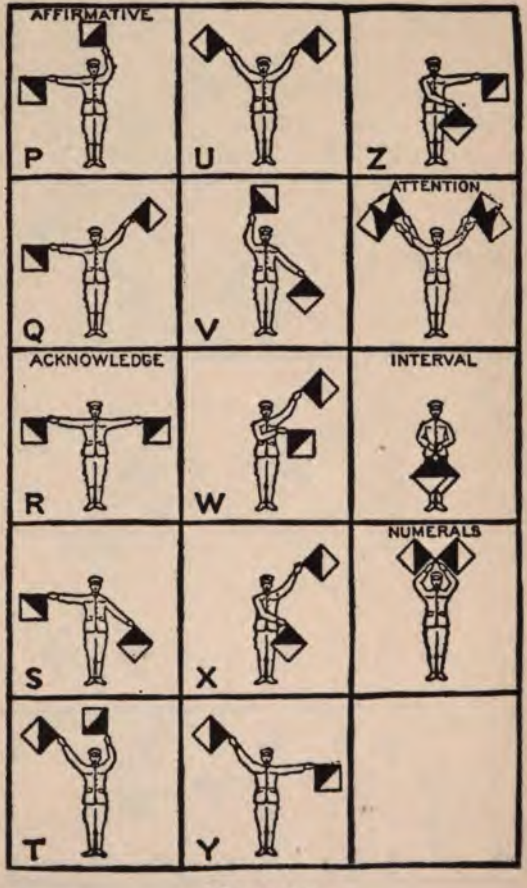

AFFIRMATIVE
P
U
Z
ATTENTION
Q
V
ACKNOWLEDGE
INTERVAL
R
W
NUMERALS
S
X
T
Y

FIG. 40-B

CHAPTER XII

INTERIOR GUARD DUTY

Sergeant of the Guard

In this chapter the authors have included the portions of the Manual of Interior Guard Duty of the U. S. Army which refer to the noncommissioned officers and privates. The paragraph numbers are the same as those in the Interior Guard Manual.

Note.—The following is taken from the Manual of Interior Guard Duty of the U. S. Army.

80.[1] The senior noncommissioned officer of the guard always acts as sergeant of the guard, and, if there be no officer of the guard, will perform the duties prescribed for the commander of the guard.

81. The sergeant of the guard has general supervision over the other noncommissioned officers and the musicians and privates of the guard, and must be thoroughly familiar with all of their orders and duties.

82. He is directly responsible for the property under charge of the guard, and will see that it is properly cared for. He will make lists of articles taken out by working parties, and see that all such articles are duly returned. If they are not, he will immediately report the fact to the commander of the guard.

---

[1] These numbers correspond to the paragraph numbers of the Manual of Interior Guard Duty.

83. Immediately after guard mounting he will prepare duplicate lists of the names of all noncommissioned officers, musicians, and privates of the guard, showing the relief and post or duties of each. One list will be handed as soon as possible to the commander of the guard; the other will be retained by the sergeant.

84. He will see that all reliefs are turned out at the proper time, and that the corporals thoroughly understand, and are prompt and efficient in, the discharge of their duties.

85. During the temporary absence from the guardhouse of the sergeant of the guard, the next in rank of the noncommissioned officers will perform his duties.

86. Should the corporal whose relief is on post be called away from the guardhouse, the sergeant of the guard will designate a noncommissioned officer to take the corporal's place until his return.

87. The sergeant of the guard is responsible at all times for the proper police of the guardhouse or guard tent, including the ground about them and the prison cells.

88. At *"first sergeant's call"* he will proceed to the adjutant's office and obtain the guard report book.

89. When the national or regimental colors are taken from the stacks of the color line, the color bearer and guard, or the sergeant of the guard, unarmed, and two armed privates as a guard, will escort the colors to the colonel's quarters, as prescribed for the color guard in the drill regulations of the arm of the service to which the guard belongs.

90. He will report to the commander of the guard any suspicious or unusual occurrence that comes under his notice, will warn him of the approach of any armed body, and will send to him all persons arrested by the guard.

91. When the guard is turned out, its formation will

be as follows: The senior noncommissioned officer, if commander of the guard, is on the right of the right guide; if not commander of the guard, he is in the line of file closers, in rear of the right four of the guard; the next in rank is right guide; the next left guide; the others in the line of file closers, usually, each in rear of his relief; the field music, with its left three paces to the right of the right guide. The reliefs form in the same order as when the guard was first divided, except that if the guard consists of dismounted cavalry and infantry, the cavalry forms on the left.

92. The sergeant forms the guard, calls the roll, and, if not in command of the guard, reports to the commander of the guard as prescribed in drill regulations for a first sergeant forming a troop or company; the guard is not divided into platoons or sections, and, except when the whole guard is formed prior to marching off, fours are not counted.

93. The sergeant reports as follows: "*Sir, all present or accounted for,*" or "*Sir, (so-and-so) is absent*"; or if the roll call has been omitted, "*Sir, the guard is formed.*" Only men absent without proper authority are reported absent. He then takes his place, without command.

94. At night, the roll may be called by reliefs and numbers instead of names; thus, the first relief being on post: *Second relief; No. 1; No. 2,* etc.; *Third relief, Corporal; No. 1,* etc.

95. Calling the roll will be dispensed with in forming the guard when it is turned out as a compliment, on the approach of an armed body, or in any sudden emergency; but in such cases the roll may be called before dismissing the guard. If the guard be turned out for an officer en-

titled to inspect it, the roll will, unless he directs otherwise, always be called before a report is made.

96. The sergeant of the guard has direct charge of the prisoners, except during such time as they may be under the charge of the prisoner guard or overseers, and is responsible to the commander of the guard for their security.

97. He will carry the keys of the guardroom and cells, and will not suffer them to leave his personal possession while he is at the guardhouse, except as hereinafter provided. (Par. 99.) Should he leave the guardhouse for any purpose, he will turn the keys over to the noncommissioned officer who takes his place. (Par. 85.)

98. He will count the knives, forks, etc., given to the prisoners with their food, and see that none of these articles remain in their possession. He will see that no forbidden articles of any kind are conveyed to the prisoners.

99. Prisoners, when paraded with the guard, are placed in line in its center. The sergeant, immediately before forming the guard, will turn over his keys to the noncommissioned officer at the guardhouse. Having formed the guard, he will divide it into two nearly equal parts. Indicating the point of division with his hand, he commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*), 2. *FACE,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *MARCH,* 5. *Guard,* 6. *HALT,* 7. *Left* (or *right*), 8. *FACE.*

If the first command be *right face,* the right half of the guard only will execute the movements; if *left face,* the left half only will execute them. The command *halt* is given when sufficient interval is obtained to admit the prisoners. The doors of the guardroom and cells are then opened by the noncommissioned officer having the

keys. The prisoners will file out under the supervision of the sergeant, the noncommissioned officer, and sentinel on duty at the guardhouse, and such other sentinels as may be necessary; they will form in line in the interval between the two parts of the guard.

100. To return the prisoners to the guardroom and cells, the sergeant commands:

1. *Prisoners,* 2. *Right* (or *left*), 3. *FACE,* 4. *Column right* (or *left*), 5. *MARCH.*

The prisoners, under the same supervision as before, return to their proper rooms or cells.

101. To close the guard, the sergeant commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*), 2. *FACE,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *MARCH,* 5. *Guard,* 6. *HALT,* 7. *Right* (or *left*), 8. *FACE.*

The left or right half only of the guard, as indicated, execute the movements.

102. If there be but few prisoners, the sergeant may indicate the point of division as above, and form the necessary interval by the commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *step,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Guard,* 4. *HALT,* and close the intervals by the commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*) *step,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Guard,* 4. *HALT.*

103. If sentinels are numerous, reliefs may, at the discretion of the commanding officer, be posted in detachments, and sergeants, as well as corporals, required to relieve and post them.

Corporal of the Guard

104. A corporal of the guard receives and obeys orders from none but noncommissioned officers of the guard senior to himself, the officers of the guard, the officer of the day, and the commanding officer.

105. It is the duty of the corporal of the guard to post and relieve sentinels, and to instruct the members of his relief in their orders and duties.

106. Immediately after the division of the guard into reliefs the corporals will assign the members of their respective reliefs to posts by number, and a soldier so assigned to his post will not be changed to another during the same tour of guard duty, unless by direction of the commander of the guard or higher authority. Usually, experienced soldiers are placed over the arms of the guard, and at remote and responsible posts.

107. Each corporal will then make a list of the members of his relief, including himself. This list will contain the number of the relief, the name, the company, and the regiment of every member thereof, and the post to which each is assigned. The list will be made in duplicate, one copy to be given to the sergeant of the guard as soon as completed, the other to be retained by the corporal.

108. When directed by the commander of the guard, the corporal of the first relief forms his relief, and then commands: *CALL OFF.*

Commencing on the right, the men call off alternately *rear* and *front* rank, "*one*," "*two*," "*three*," "*four*," and so on; if in single rank, they call off from right to left. The corporal then commands:

1. *Right,* 2. *FACE,* 3. *Forward,* 4. *MARCH.*

The corporal marches on the left, and near the rear file, in order to observe the march. The corporal of the old guard marches on the right of the leading file, and takes command when the last one of the old sentinels is relieved, changing places with the corporal of the new guard.

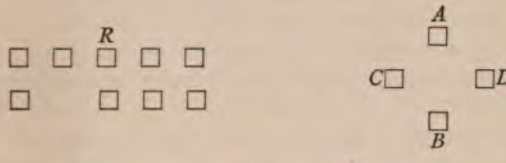
109. When the relief arrives at six paces from a sen-

tinel (see par. 168), the corporal halts it and commands, according to the number of the post: *No.* (—).

Both sentinels execute port arms or saber; the new sentinel approaches the old, halting about one pace from him. (See par. 172.)

110. The corporals advance and place themselves, facing each other, a little in advance of the new sentinel, the old corporal on his right, the new corporal on his left, both at a right shoulder, and observe that the old sentinel transmits correctly his instructions.

The following diagram will illustrate the positions taken:



R is the relief; *A*, the new corporal; B, the old; *C*, the new sentinel; *D*, the old.

111. The instructions relative to the post having been communicated, the new corporal commands, *POST;* both sentinels then resume the right shoulder, face toward the new corporal, and step back so as to allow the relief to pass in front of them. The new corporal then commands, 1. *Forward,* 2. *MARCH;* the old sentinel takes his place in rear of the relief as it passes him, his piece in the same position as those of the relief. The new sentinel stands fast at a right shoulder until the relief has passed six paces beyond him., when he walks his post. The corporals take their places as the relief passes them.

112. Mounted sentinels are posted and relieved in accordance with the same principles.

113. On the return of the old relief, the corporal of the new guard falls out when the relief halts; the corporal of the old guard forms his relief on the left of the old guard, salutes, and reports to the commander of his guard: *"Sir, the relief is present,"* or *"Sir, (so and so) is absent,"* and takes his place in the guard.

114. To post a relief other than that which is posted when the old guard is relieved, its corporal commands:

1. (*Such*) *relief,* 2. *FALL IN;* and if arms are stacked, they are taken at the proper commands.

The relief is formed facing to the front, with arms at an *order;* the men place themselves according to the numbers of their respective posts, viz., *two, four, six,* and so on, in the *front rank,* and *one, three, five,* and so on, in the *rear rank.* The corporal, standing about two paces in front of the center of his relief, then commands: *CALL OFF.*

The men call off as prescribed. The corporal then commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. *ARMS,* 3. *Order,* 4. *ARMS;* faces the commander of the guard, executes the rifle salute, reports: *"Sir, the relief is present,"* or *"Sir, (so and so) is absent";* he then takes his place on the right at order arms.

115. When the commander of the guard directs the corporal: *"Post your relief,"* the corporal salutes and posts his relief as prescribed (pars. 108 to 111); the corporal of the relief on post does not go with the new relief, except when necessary to show the way.

116. To dismiss the old relief, it is halted and faced to the front at the guardhouse by the corporal of the new relief, who then falls out; the corporal of the old relief then steps in front of the relief and dismisses it by the proper commands.

117. Should the pieces have been loaded before the

relief was posted, the corporal will, before dismissing the relief, see that no cartridges are left in the chambers or magazines. The same rule applies to sentinels over prisoners.

118. Each corporal will thoroughly acquaint himself with all the special orders of every sentinel on his relief, and see that each understands and correctly transmits such orders *in detail* to his successor.

119. There should be at least one noncommissioned officer constantly on the alert at the guardhouse, usually the corporal whose relief is on post. This noncommissioned officer takes post near the entrance of the guardhouse, and does not fall in with the guard when it is formed. He will have his rifle constantly with him.

120. Whenever it becomes necessary for the corporal to leave his post near the entrance of the guardhouse, he will notify the sergeant of the guard, who will at once take his place, or designate another noncommissioned officer to do so.

121. He will see that no person enters the guardhouse, or guard tent, or crosses the posts of the sentinels there posted without proper authority.

122. Should any sentinel call for the corporal of the guard, the corporal will, in every case, at once and quickly proceed to such sentinel. He will notify the sergeant of the guard before leaving the guardhouse.

123. He will at once report to the commander of the guard any violation of regulations or any unusual occurrence which is reported to him by a sentinel, or which comes to his notice in any other way.

124. Should a sentinel call: "*The Guard*," the corporal will promptly notify the commander of the guard.

125. Should a sentinel call: "*Relief*," the corporal will at once proceed to the post of such sentinel, taking with

him the man next for duty on that post. If the sentinel is relieved for a short time only, the corporal will again post him as soon as the necessity for his relief ceases.

126. When the countersign is used, the corporal at the posting of the relief during whose tour challenging is to begin gives the countersign to the members of the relief, excepting those posted at the guardhouse.

127. He will wake the corporal whose relief is next on post in time for the latter to verify the prisoners, form his relief, and post it at the proper hour.

128. Should the guard be turned out, each corporal will call his own relief, and cause its members to fall in promptly.

129. Tents or bunks in the same vicinity will be designated for the reliefs so that all the members of each relief may, if necessary, be found and turned out by the corporal in the least time and with the least confusion.

130. When challenged by a sentinel while posting his relief, the corporal commands: 1. *Relief,* 2. *HALT;* to the sentinel's challenge he answers "*Relief,*" and at the order of the sentinel he advances alone to give the countersign, or to be recognized. When the sentinel says, "*Advance relief,*" the corporal commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *MARCH.*

If to be relieved, the sentinel is then relieved as prescribed.

131. Between retreat and reveille, the corporal of the guard will challenge all suspicious looking persons or parties he may observe, first halting his patrol or relief, if either be with him. He will advance them in the same manner that sentinels on post advance like parties (pars. 191 to 197), but if the route of a patrol is on a continuous chain of sentinels, he should not challenge persons

coming near him unless he has reason to believe that they have eluded the vigilance of sentinels.

132. Between retreat and reveille, whenever so ordered by an officer entitled to inspect the guard, the corporal will call: "*Turn out the guard,*" announcing the title of the officer, and then, if not otherwise ordered, he will salute and return to his post.

133. As a general rule, he will advance parties approaching the guard at night in the same manner that sentinels on post advance like parties. Thus, the sentinel at the guardhouse challenges and repeats the answer to the corporal, as prescribed hereinafter (par. 200); the corporal, advancing at "port arms," says: "*Advance (so and so) with the countersign,*" or "*to be recognized,*" if there be no countersign used; the countersign being correctly given, or the party being duly recognized, the corporal says: "*Advance (so and so)*"; repeating the answer to the challenge of the sentinel.

134. When officers of different rank approach the guardhouse from different directions at the same time, the senior will be advanced first, and will not be made to wait for his junior.

135. Out of ranks and under arms, the corporal salutes with the rifle salute. He will salute all officers whether by day or night.

136. The corporal will examine parties halted and detained by sentinels, and if he has reason to believe the parties have no authority to cross sentinel's posts, will conduct them to the commander of the guard.

137. The corporal of the guard will arrest all suspicious looking characters prowling about the post or camp, all persons of a disorderly character disturbing the peace, and all persons taken in the act of committing crime against the Government on a milit- or

post. All persons arrested by corporals of the guard, or by sentinels, will at once be conducted to the commander of the guard by the corporal.

Privates of the Guard

Your duty as a sentinel is outlined in the following eight suggestions for sentinels:

1. Never let your rifle out of your hands.
2. As a sentinel you have absolute authority in enforcing the orders given to you.
3. Be ever on the alert.
4. Be sure you know and understand the special orders of your post.
5. Use your common sense.
6. Don't shoot at your shadow. Too many young soldiers on Interior Guard Duty shoot at the slightest provocation and get in bad as a result.
7. A sentinel always salutes by presenting arms.
8. At night challenge everyone, including the commanding officer.

Privates of the Guard

154. Privates are assigned to reliefs by the commander of the guard, and to posts, usually, by the corporal of their relief. They will not change from one relief or post to another during the same tour of guard duty unless by proper authority.

Orders for Sentinels

155. Orders for sentinels are of two classes: General orders and special orders. General orders apply to all sentinels. Special orders relate to particular posts and duties.

156. Sentinels will be required to memorize the following:

My general orders are:

1. *To take charge of this post and all Government property in view.*

2. *To walk my post in a military manner, keeping always on the alert and observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing.*

3. *To report all violations of orders I am instructed to enforce.*

4. *To repeat all calls from posts more distant from the guardhouse than my own.*

5. *To quit my post only when properly relieved.*

6. *To receive, obey, and pass on to the sentinel who relieves me all orders from the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard only.*

7. *To talk to no one except in line of duty.*

8. *In case of fire or disorder, to give the alarm.*

9. *To allow no one to commit a nuisance on or near my post.*

10. *In any case not covered by instructions to call the corporal of the guard.*

11. *To salute all officers and all colors and standards not cased.*

12. *To be especially watchful at night, and, during the time for challenging, to challenge all persons on or near my post, and to allow no one to pass without proper authority.*

Regulations Relating to the General Orders for Sentinels

No. 1: *To take charge of this post and all Government property in view.*

157. All persons, of whatever rank in the service, are required to observe respect toward sentinels and members of the guard when such are in the performance of their duties.

158. A sentinel will at once report to the corporal of the guard every unusual or suspicious occurrence noted.

159. He will arrest suspicious persons prowling about the post or camp at any time, all parties to a disorder occurring on or near his post, and all, except authorized persons, who attempt to enter the camp at night, and will turn over to the corporal of the guard all persons arrested.

160. The number, limits, and extent of his post will invariably constitute part of the special orders of a sentinel on post. The limits of his post should be so defined as to include every place to which he is required to go in the performance of his duties.

No. 2: *To walk my post in a military manner, keeping always on the alert and observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing.*

161. A sentinel is not required to halt and change the position of his rifle on arriving at the end of his post, nor to execute *to the rear, march,* precisely as prescribed in the drill regulations, but faces about while walking, in the manner most convenient to him, and at any part of his post as may be best suited to the proper performance of his duties. He carries his rifle on either shoulder, and in wet or severe weather, when not in a sentry box, may carry it at a secure.

162. Sentinels when in sentry boxes stand at ease. Sentry boxes will be used in wet weather only, or at other times when specially authorized by the commanding officer.

163. In very hot weather, sentinels may be authorized

to stand at ease on their posts, provided they can effectively discharge their duties in this position, but they will take advantage of this privilege only on the express authority of the officer of the day or the commander of the guard.

164. A mounted sentinel may dismount occasionally and lead his horse but will not relax his vigilance.

No. 3: *To report all violations of orders I am instructed to enforce.*

165. A sentinel will ordinarily report a violation of orders when he is inspected or relieved, but if the case be urgent he will call the corporal of the guard, and also, if necessary, will arrest the offender.

No. 4: *To repeat all calls from posts more distant from the guardhouse than my own.*

166. To call the corporal, or the guard, for any purpose other than relief, fire, or disorder (pars. 167 and 173), a sentinel will call, "*Corporal of the guard, No.* (—)," adding the number of his post. In no case will any sentinel call, "*Never mind the corporal*"; nor will the corporal heed such call if given.

No. 5: *To quit my post only when properly relieved.*

167. If relief becomes necessary, by reason of sickness or other cause, a sentinel will call, "*Corporal of the guard, No.* (—), *Relief*," giving the number of his post.

168. Whenever a sentinel is to be relieved, he will halt, and with arms at a right shoulder, will face toward the relief when it is thirty paces from him. He will come to a port arms with the new sentinel, and in a low tone will transmit to him all the special orders relating to the post, and any other information which will assist him to better perform his duties.

No. 6: *To receive, obey, and pass on to the sentinel who relieves me all orders from the commanding officer.*

officer of the day, and officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard only.

169. During this tour of duty a soldier is subject to the orders of the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and noncommissioned officers of the guard only; but any officer is competent to investigate apparent violations of regulations by members of the guard.

170. A sentinel will quit his place on an explicit order from any person from whom he lawfully receives orders while on post; under no circumstances will he yield it to any other person. Unless necessity therefor exists, no person will require a sentinel to quit his piece even to allow it to be inspected.

171. A sentinel will not divulge the countersign (pars. 209 to 217) to any one except the sentinel who relieves him, or to a person from whom he properly receives orders, on such person's verbal order given personally. Privates of the guard will not use the countersign except in the performance of their duties while posted as sentinels.

No. 7: *To talk to no one except in line of duty.*

172. When calling for any purpose, challenging, or holding communication with any person, a dismounted sentinel, armed with a rifle or saber, will take the position of "port" arms or saber. At night a dismounted sentinel, armed with a pistol, takes the position of raise pistol in challenging or holding communication. A mounted sentinel does not ordinarily draw his weapon in the daytime when challenging or holding conversation; but if drawn, he holds it at advance rifle, raise pistol, or port saber, according as he is armed with a rifle, pistol, or saber. At night, in challenging and holding conversation, his weapon is drawn and held as just prescribed, depending on whether he is armed with a rifle, pistol, or saber.

No. 8: *In case of fire or disorder, to give the alarm.*

173. In case of fire, a sentinel will call, "*Fire, No.* (—)," adding the number of his post; if possible, he will extinguish the fire himself. In case of disorder, he will call: "*The Guard, No.* (—)," adding the number of his post. If the danger be great, he will, in either case, discharge his piece before calling.

No. 11: *To salute all officers and all colors and standards not cased.*

174. When not engaged in the performance of a specific duty, the proper execution of which would prevent it, a member of the guard will salute all officers who pass him. This rule applies at all hours of the day or night, except in the case of mounted sentinels armed with a rifle or pistol, or dismounted sentinels armed with a pistol, after challenging. (See par. 181.)

175. Sentinels will salute as follows: A dismounted sentinel armed with a rifle or saber salutes by presenting arms; if otherwise armed, he salutes with the right hand.

A mounted sentinel, if armed with a saber and the saber be drawn, salutes by presenting saber; otherwise he salutes in all cases with the right hand.

176. To salute, a dismounted sentinel, with piece at a right shoulder or saber at a carry, halts and faces toward the person to be saluted when the latter arrives within thirty paces.

The limit within which individuals and insignia of rank can be readily recognized is assumed to be about 30 paces, and therefore at this distance cognizance is taken of the person or party to be saluted.

177. The salute is rendered at 6 paces; if the person to be saluted does not arrive within that distance, then when he is nearest.

178. A sentinel in a sentry box, armed with a rifle, stands at attention in the doorway on the approach of a person or party entitled to salute, and salutes by presenting arms according to the foregoing rules.

If armed with a saber, he stands at a carry and salutes as before.

179. A mounted sentinel on a regular post halts, faces, and salutes in accordance with the foregoing rules. If doing patrol duty, he salutes, but does not halt unless spoken to.

180. Sentinels salute, in accordance with the foregoing rules, all persons and parties entitled to compliments from the guard (pars. 224, 227, and 228): officers of the Army, Navy, and Marine Corps; military and naval officers of foreign powers; officers of volunteers, and militia officers when in uniform.

181. A sentinel salutes as just prescribed when an officer comes on his post; if the officer holds communication with the sentinel, the sentinel again salutes when the officer leaves him.

During the hours when challenging is prescribed, the first salute is given as soon as the officer has been duly recognized and advanced. A mounted sentinel armed with a rifle or pistol, or a dismounted sentinel armed with a pistol, does not salute after challenging.

He stands at advance rifle or raise pistol until the officer passes.

182. In case of the approach of an armed party of the guard, the sentinel will halt when it is about 30 paces from him, facing toward the party with his piece at the right shoulder. If not himself relieved, he will, as the party passes, place himself so that the party will pass in front of him; he resumes walking his post when the party *has* reached 6 paces beyond him.

183. An officer is entitled to the compliments prescribed, whether in uniform or not.

184. A sentinel in communication with an officer will not interrupt the conversation to salute. In the case of seniors the officer will salute, whereupon the sentinel will salute.

185. When the flag is being lowered at retreat, a sentinel on post and in view of the flag will face the flag, and, at the first note of the "Star Spangled Banner" or To the colors, will come to a present arms. At the sounding of the last note he will resume walking his post.

No. 12: *To be especially watchful at night and during the time for challenging, to challenge all persons on or near my post, and to allow no one to pass without proper authority.*

186. During challenging hours, if a sentinel sees any person or party on or near his post, he will advance rapidly along his post toward such person or party and when within about 30 yards will challenge sharply, "*HALT. Who is there?*" He will place himself in the best possible position to receive or, if necessary, to arrest the person or party.

187. In case a mounted party be challenged, the sentinel will call, "*HALT. DISMOUNT. Who is there?*"

188. The sentinel will permit only one of any party to approach him for the purpose of giving the countersign (pars. 209 to 217), or if no countersign be used, of being duly recognized. When this is done the whole party is advanced, i. e., allowed to pass.

189. In all cases the sentinel must satisfy himself beyond a reasonable doubt that the parties are what they represent themselves to be and have a right to pass. If he is not satisfied, he must cause them to stand, and call the corporal of the guard. So, likewise, if he have no

authority to pass persons with the countersign, or when the party has not the countersign, or gives an incorrect one.

190. A sentinel will not permit any person to approach so close as to prevent the proper use of his own weapon before recognizing the person or receiving the countersign.

191. When two or more persons approach in one party, the sentinel, on receiving an answer that indicates that some one in the party has the countersign, will say, "*Advance one with the countersign,*" and, if the countersign is given correctly, will then say, "*Advance (so and so),*" repeating the answer to his challenge. Thus, if the answer be, "*Relief (friends with the countersign, patrol, etc.),*" the sentinel will say, "*Advance one with the countersign*"; then, "*Advance relief (friends, patrol, etc.).*"

192. If a person having the countersign approach alone, he is advanced to give the countersign. Thus, if the answer be, "*Friend with the countersign (or officer of the day, or, etc.),*" the sentinel will say, "*Advance, friend (or officer of the day, or, etc.) with the countersign*"; then, "*Advance, friend (or officer of the day, or, etc.).*"

193. If two or more persons approach a sentinel's post from different directions at the same time, all such persons are challenged in turn and required to halt and to remain halted until advanced.

The senior is first advanced, in accordance with the foregoing rules.

194. If a party is already advanced and in communication with a sentinel, the latter will challenge any other party that may approach; if the party challenged be senior to the one already on his post, the sentinel will advance the new party at once. The senior may allow

him to advance any or all of the other parties; otherwise, the sentinel will not advance any of them until the senior leaves him. He will then advance the senior only of the remaining parties, and so on.

195. The following order of rank will govern a sentinel in advancing different persons or parties approaching his post: Commanding officer, officer of the day, officer of the guard, officers, patrols, reliefs, noncommissioned officers of the guard in order of rank, friends.

196. A sentinel will never allow himself to be surprised, nor permit two parties to advance upon him at the same time.

197. If no countersign be used, the rules for challenging are the same. The rules for advancing parties are modified only as follows: Instead of saying, "*Advance (so and so) with the countersign,*" the sentinel will say, "*Advance (so and so) to be recognized.*" Upon recognition he will say, "*Advance (so and so).*"

198. Answers to a sentinel's challenge intended to confuse or mislead him are prohibited, but the use of such an answer as "*Friends with the countersign,*" is not to be understood as misleading, but as the usual answer made by officers, patrols, etc., when the purpose of their visit makes it desirable that their official capacity should not be announced.

Special Orders for Sentinels at the Post of the Guard

199. Sentinels posted at the guard will be required to memorize the following:

Between reveille and retreat to turn out the guard for all persons designated by the commanding officer, for all colors or standards not cased, and in time

all armed parties approaching my post, except troops at drill and reliefs and detachments of the guard.

At night, after challenging any person or party, to advance no one, but call the corporal of the guard, repeating the answer to the challenge.

200. After receiving an answer to his challenge, the sentinel calls, "*Corporal of the guard (so and so),*" repeating the answer to the challenge.

He does not in such cases repeat the number of his post.

201. He remains in the position assumed in challenging until the corporal has recognized or advanced the person or party challenged, when he resumes walking his post, or, if the person or party be entitled thereto, he salutes and, as soon as the salute has been acknowledged, resumes walking his post.

202. The sentinel at the post of the guard will be notified by direction of the commanding officer of the presence in camp or garrison of persons entitled to the compliment. (Par. 224.)

203. The following examples illustrate the manner in which the sentinel at the post of the guard will turn out the guard upon the approach of persons or parties entitled to the compliment (pars. 224, 227, and 228): "*Turn out the guard, Commanding Officer*"; "*Turn out the guard, Governor of a Territory*"; "*Turn out the guard, national colors*"; "*Turn out the guard, armed party*"; etc.

At the approach of the new guard at guard mounting the sentinel will call "*Turn out the guard, armed party.*"

204. Should the person named by the sentinel not desire the guard formed, he will salute, whereupon the sentinel will call "*Never mind the guard.*"

205. After having called "*Turn out the guard,*" the

sentinel will never call "*Never mind the guard,*" on the approach of an armed party.

206. Though the guard be already formed he will not fail to call "*Turn out the guard,*" as required in his special orders, except that the guard will not be turned out for any person while his senior is at or coming to the post of the guard.

207. The sentinels at the post of the guard will warn the commander of the approach of any armed body and of the presence in the vicinity of all suspicious or disorderly persons.

208. In case of fire or disorder in sight or hearing, the sentinel at the guardhouse will call the corporal of the guard and report the facts to him.

Countersigns and Paroles

209. *Forty-fourth Article of War.* Any person belonging to the armies of the United States who makes known the watchword to any person not entitled to receive it, according to the rules and discipline of war, or presumes to give a parole or watchword different from that which he received, shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct. (See par. 171.)

210. The *countersign* is a word given daily from the principal headquarters of a command to aid guards and sentinels in identifying persons who may be authorized to pass at night.

It is given to such persons as may be authorized to pass and repass sentinels' posts during the night, and to officers, noncommissioned officers, and sentinels of the guard.

211. The *parole* is a word used as a check on the countersign in order to obtain more accurate identifica-

tion of persons. It is imparted only to those who are entitled to inspect guards and to commanders of guards.

The parole or countersign, or both, are sent sealed in the form of an order to those entitled to them.

212. When the commander of the guard demands the parole, he will advance and receive it as the corporal receives the countersign. (See par. 133.)

213. As the communications containing the parole and countersign must at times be distributed by many orderlies, the parole intrusted to many officers, and the countersign and parole to many officers and sentinels, and as both the countersign and parole must, for large commands, be prepared several days in advance, there is always danger of their being lost or becoming known to persons who would make improper use of them; moreover, a sentinel is too apt to take it for granted that any person who gives the right countersign is what he represents himself to be; hence for outpost duty there is greater security in omitting the use of the countersign and parole, or in using them with great caution. The chief reliance should be upon personal recognition or identification of all persons claiming authority to pass.

Persons whose sole means of identification is the countersign, or concerning whose authority to pass there is reasonable doubt, should not be allowed to pass without the authority of the corporal of the guard after proper investigation; the corporal will take to his next superior any person about whom he is not competent to decide.

214. The *countersign* is usually the name of a battle; the *parole*, that of a general or other distinguished person.

215. When they can not be communicated daily, a series of words for some days in advance may be sent to posts or detachments that are to use the same parole or countersign as the main body.

216. If the countersign be lost, or if a member of the guard desert with it, the commander on the spot will substitute another for it and report the case at once to headquarters.

217. In addition to the countersign, use may be made of preconcerted signals, such as striking the rifle with the hand or striking the hands together a certain number of times, as agreed upon. Such signals may be used only by guards that occupy exposed points.

They are used before the countersign is given, and must not be communicated to anyone not entitled to know the countersign. Their use is intended to prevent the surprise of a sentinel.

In the daytime signals such as raising a cap or a handkerchief in a prearranged manner may be used by sentinels to communicate with the guard or with each other.

Guarding Prisoners

299. The sentinel at the post of the guard has charge of the prisoners except when they have been turned over to the prisoner guard or overseers. (Pars. 247 and 300 to 304, "I. D. R.")

(a) *He will allow none to escape.*

(b) *He will allow none to cross his post leaving the guardhouse except when passed by an officer or non-commissioned officer of the guard.*

(c) *He will allow no one to communicate with prisoners without permission from proper authority.*

(d) *He will promptly report to the corporal of the guard any suspicious noise made by the prisoners.*

(e) *He will be prepared to tell whenever asked how many prisoners are in the guardhouse and how many are out at work or elsewhere.*

Whenever prisoners are brought to his post returning from work or elsewhere, he will halt them and call the corporal of the guard, notifying him of the number of prisoners returning. Thus: "*Corporal of the guard, (so many) prisoners.*"

305. If a prisoner attempts to escape, the sentinel will call "*Halt.*" If he fails to halt when the sentinel has once repeated his call, and if there be no other possible means of preventing his escape, the sentinel will fire upon him.

Guard Mounting

347. Guard mounting will be formal or informal as the commanding officer may direct. It will be held as prescribed in the drill regulations of the arm of the service to which the guard belongs; if none is prescribed, then as for infantry. In case the guard is composed wholly of mounted organizations, guard mounting may be held mounted.

348. When infantry and mounted troops dismounted are united for guard mounting, all details form as prescribed for infantry.

Formal Guard Mounting for Infantry

349. Formal guard mounting will ordinarily be held only in posts or camps where a band is present.

350. At the *assembly,* the men designated for the guard fall in on their company parade grounds as prescribed in paragraph 106, "I. D. R." The first sergeant then verifies the detail, inspects it, replaces any man unfit to go on guard, turns the detail over to the senior noncommissioned officer, and retires. The band takes its

place on the parade ground so that the left of its front rank shall be 12 paces to the right of the front rank of the guard when the latter is formed.

351. At *adjutant's call,* the adjutant, dismounted, and the sergeant major on his left, march to the parade ground. The adjutant halts and takes post so as to be 12 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed; the sergeant major continues on, moves by the left flank, and takes post, facing to the left, 12 paces to the left of the front rank of the band; the band plays in quick or double time; the details are marched to the parade ground by the senior noncommissioned officers; the detail that arrives first is marched to the line so that, upon halting, the breast of the front-rank man shall be near to and opposite the left arm of the sergeant major; the commander of the detail halts his detail, places himself in front of and facing the sergeant major, at a distance equal to or a little greater than the front of his detail, and commands: 1. *Right,* 2. *DRESS.* The detail dresses up to the line of the sergeant major and its commander, the right front-rank man placing his breast against the left arm of the sergeant major; the noncommissioned officers take post two paces in rear of the rear rank of the detail. The detail aligned, the commander of the detail commands: *FRONT,* salutes, and then reports: *"The detail is correct"*; or "(*So many*) *sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent*"; the sergeant major returns the salute with the right hand after the report is made; the commander then passes by the right of the guard and takes post in the line of noncommissioned officers in rear of the right file of his detail.

Should there be more than one detail, it is formed in like manner on the left of the one preceding; the privates, noncommissioned officers, and commander of each

detail dress on those of the preceding details in the same rank or line; each detail commander closes the rear rank to the right and fills blank files, as far as practicable, with the men from his front rank.

Should the guard from a company not include a non-commissioned officer, one will be detailed to perform the duties of commander of the detail. In this case the commander of the detail, after reporting to the sergeant major, passes around the right flank between the guard and the band and retires.

352. When the last detail has formed, the sergeant major takes a side step to the right, draws sword, verifies the detail, takes post two paces to the right and two paces to the front of the guard, facing to the left, causes the guard to count off, completes the left squad, if necessary, as in the school of the company, and if there be more than three squads, divides the guard into two platoons, again takes post as described above and commands: 1. *Open ranks,* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march,* the rear rank and file closers march backward four steps, halt, and dress to the right. The sergeant major aligns the ranks and file closers and again, taking post as described above, commands: *FRONT,* moves parallel to the front rank until opposite the center, turns to the right, halts midway to the adjutant, salutes, and reports: *"Sir, the details are correct";* or, *"Sir, (so many) sergeants, corporals,* or *privates are absent";* the adjutant returns the salute, directs the sergeant major: *Take your post,* and then draws saber; the sergeant major faces about, approaches to within two paces of the center of the front rank, turns to the right, moves three paces beyond the left of the front rank, turns to the left, halts on the line of the front rank, faces about, and brings his sword to the order. When the

sergeant major has reported, the officer of the guard takes post, facing to the front, three paces in front of the center of the guard, and draws saber.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,* 2. *Front and center,* 3. *MARCH.*

At the command *center,* the officers carry saber. At the command *march,* the officer advances and halts three paces from the adjutant, remaining at the carry; the noncommissioned officers pass by the flanks, along the front, and form in order of rank from right to left, three paces in rear of the officer, remaining at the right shoulder; if there is no officer of the guard, the noncommissioned officers halt on a line three paces from the adjutant; the adjutant then assigns the officers and noncommissioned officers according to rank, as follows: *Commander of the guard, leader of first platoon, leader of second platoon, right guide of first platoon, left guide of second platoon, left guide of first platoon, right guide of second platoon,* and *file closers,* or, if the guard is not divided into platoons: *Commander of the guard, right guide, left guide,* and *file closers.*

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,* 2. *POSTS,* 3. *MARCH.*

At the command *posts,* all, except the officer commanding the guard, face about. At the command *march,* they take the posts prescribed in the school of the company with open ranks. The adjutant directs: *Inspect your guard, sir;* at which the officer commanding the guard faces about, commands: *Prepare for inspection,* returns saber, and inspects the guard.

During the inspection, the band plays; the adjutant returns saber, observes the general condition of the guard, and falls out any man who is unfit for guard duty or does

not present a creditable appearance. Substitutes will report to the commander of the guard at the guardhouse.

353. The adjutant, when so directed, selects orderlies and color sentinels, as prescribed in paragraphs 140 and 141, and notifies the commander of the guard of his selection.

354. If there be a junior officer of the guard he takes post at the same time as the senior, facing to the front, 3 paces in front of the center of the first platoon; in going to the front and center he follows and takes position on the left of the senior and is assigned as leader of the first platoon; he may be directed by the commander of the guard to assist in inspecting the guard.

If there be no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard. A noncommissioned officer commanding the guard takes post on the right of the right guide, when the guard is in line; and takes the post of the officer of the guard, when in column or passing in review.

355. The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about 30 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, and draws saber; the new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the guard, about 30 paces from the adjutant; the old officer of the day takes post 3 paces to the right of and 1 pace to the rear of the new officer of the day; the officer of the guard takes post 3 paces in front of its center, draws saber with the adjutant and comes to the order; thereafter he takes the same relative positions as a captain of a company.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Parade,* 2. *REST,* 3. *SOUND OFF,* and comes to the order and parade rest.

The band, playing, passes in front of the officer of the guard to the left of the line, and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing.

The adjutant then comes to attention, carries saber, and

commands: 1. *Guard,* 2. *ATTENTION,* 3. *Close ranks,* 4. *MARCH.*

The ranks are opened and closed as in paragraph 745, "I. D. R."

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Present,* 2. *ARMS,* faces toward the new officer of the day, salutes, and then reports: *Sir, the guard is formed.* The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, returns the salute with the hand and directs the adjutant: *March the guard in review, sir.*

The adjutant carries saber, faces about, brings the guard to an order, and commands: 1. *At trail, platoons* (or *guard*) *right,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Guard,* 4. *HALT.*

The platoons execute the movement; the band turns to the right and places itself 12 paces in front of the first platoon.

The adjutant places himself 6 paces from the flank and abreast of the commander of the guard; the sergeant major, 6 paces from the left flank of the second platoon.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Pass in review,* 2. *FORWARD,* 3. *MARCH.*

The guard marches in quick time past the officer of the day, according to the principles of review, and is brought to eyes *right* at the proper time by the commander of the guard; the adjutant, commander of the guard, leaders of platoons, sergeant major, and drum major salute.

The band, having passed the officer of the day, turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite and facing him, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground. The field music detaches itself from the band when the latter turns out of the column, and, remaining in front of the guard, commences to play when the band ceases.

Having passed 12 paces beyond the officer of the day,

the adjutant halts; the sergeant major halts abreast of the adjutant and 1 pace to his left; they then return saber, salute, and retire; the commander of the guard then commands: 1. *Platoons, right by squads,* 2. *MARCH,* and marches the guard to its post.

The officers of the day face toward each other and salute; the old officer of the day turns over the orders to the new officer of the day.

While the band is sounding off, and while the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at parade rest with arms folded. They take this position when the adjutant comes to parade rest, resume the attention with him, again take the parade rest at the first note of the marching review, and resume attention as the head of the column approaches.

The new officer of the day returns the salute of the commander of the guard and the adjutant, making one salute with the hand.

356. If the guard be not divided into platoons, the adjutant commands: 1. *At trail, guard right,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Guard,* 4. *HALT,* and it passes in review as above; the commander of the guard is 3 paces in front of its center; the adjutant places himself 6 paces from the left flank and abreast of the commander of the guard; the sergeant covers the adjutant on a line with the front rank.

Informal Guard Mounting for Infantry

357. Informal guard mounting will be held on the parade ground of the organization from which the guard is detailed. It it is detailed from more than one organization, then at such place as the commanding officer may direct.

358. *At assembly,* the detail for guard falls in on the company parade ground. The first sergeant verifies the detail, inspects their dress and general appearance, and replaces any man unfit to march on guard. He then turns the detail over to the commander of the guard and retires.

359. *At adjutant's call,* the officer of the day takes his place 15 paces in front of the center of the guard and commands: 1. *Officer* (or *officers*) *and noncommissioned officers,* 2. *Front and center,* 3. *MARCH;* whereupon the officers and noncommissioned officers take their positions, are assigned and sent to their posts as prescribed in formal guard mounting. (Par. 352.)

The officer of the day will then inspect the guard with especial reference for its fitness for the duty for which it is detailed, and will select, as prescribed in paragraphs 140 and 141, the necessary orderlies and color sentinels. The men found unfit for guard will be returned to quarters and will be replaced by others found to be suitable, if available in the company. If none are available in the company, the fact will be reported to the adjutant immediately after guard mounting.

When the inspection shall have been completed, the officer of the day resumes his position and directs the commander of the guard to march the guard to its post.

Relieving the Old Guard

360. As the new guard approaches the guardhouse, the old guard is formed in line, with its field music 3 paces to its right; and when the field music at the head of the new guard arrives opposite its left, the commander of the new guard commands: 1. *Eyes,* 2. *RIGHT:* the commander of the old guard commands: 1. *Pres* com-

manders of both guards salute. The new guard marches in quick time past the old guard.

When the commander of the new guard is opposite the field music of the old guard, he commands: *FRONT;* the commander of the old guard commands: 1. *Order,* 2. *ARMS,* as soon as the new guard shall have cleared the old guard.

The field music, having marched 3 paces beyond the field music of the old guard, changes direction to the right, and, followed by the guard, changes direction to the left when on a line with the old guard; the changes of direction are without command. The commander of the guard halts on the line of the front rank of the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, and when its rear approaches forms it in line to the left, establishes the left guide 3 paces to the right of the field music of the old guard, and on a line with the front rank, and then dresses his guard to the left; the field music of the new guard is 3 paces to the right of its front rank.

361. The new guard being dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and facing its center, commands: 1. *Present,* 2. *ARMS,* resumes his front, salutes, carries saber, faces his guard and commands: 1. *Order,* 2. *ARMS.*

Should a guard be commanded by a noncommissioned officer, he stands on the right or left of the front rank, according as he commands the old or new guard, and executes the rifle salute.

362. After the new guard arrives at its post, and has saluted the old guard, each guard is presented by its commander to its officer of the day; if there be but one officer of the day present, or if one officer acts in the capacity of old and new officer of the day, each guard is presented to him by its commander.

363. If other persons entitled to a salute approach, ea

commander of the guard will bring his own guard to attention if not already at attention. The senior commander of the two guards will then command: "1. *Old and new guards,* 2. *Present,* 3. *ARMS.*"

The junior will salute at the command "*Present Arms*" given by the senior. After the salute has been acknowledged, the senior brings both guards to the order.

364. After the salutes have been acknowledged by the officers of the day, each guard is brought to an order by its commander; the commander of the new guard then directs the orderly or orderlies to fall out and report, and causes bayonets to be fixed if so ordered by the commanding officer; bayonets will not then be unfixed during the tour except in route marches while the guard is actually marching, or when specially directed by the commanding officer.

The commander of the new guard then falls out members of the guard for detached posts, placing them under charge of the proper noncommissioned officers, divides the guard into three reliefs, *first, second,* and *third,* from right to left, and directs a list of the guard to be made by reliefs. When the guard consists of troops of different arms combined, the men are assigned to reliefs so as to insure a fair division of duty, under rules prescribed by the commanding officer.

365. The sentinels and detachments of the old guard are at once relieved by members of the new guard, the two guards standing at ease or at rest while these changes are being made. The commander of the old transmits to the commander of the new guard all his orders, instructions, and information concerning the guard and its duties. The commander of the new guard then takes possession of the guardhouse and verifies the articles in charge of the guard.

366. If considerable time is required to bring in that portion of the old guard still on post, the commanding officer may direct that as soon as the orders and property are turned over to the new guard, the portion of the old guard at the guardhouse may be marched off and dismissed. In such a case, the remaining detachment or detachments of the old guard will be inspected by the commander of the new guard when they reach the guardhouse. He will direct the senior noncommissioned officer present to march these detachments off and dismiss them in the prescribed manner.

367. In bad weather, at night, after long marches, or when the guard is very small, the field music may be dispensed with.

CHAPTER XIII[1]

TARGET PRACTICE

Section 1. Preliminary Training in Marksmanship

Effective rifle fire is generally what counts most in battle. To have effective rifle fire, the men on the firing line must be able to HIT what they are ordered to shoot at. There is no man who can not be taught how to shoot. It is not necessary or even desirable to begin instruction by firing on a rifle range. A perfectly green recruit who has never fired a rifle may be made into a good shot by a little instruction and some preliminary drills and exercises.

Before a man goes on the range to fire it is absolutely necessary that he should know—

1. How to set the rear sight.
2. How to sight or aim.
3. How to squeeze the trigger.
4. How to hold the rifle in all positions.

If he does not know these things it is worse than useless for him to fire. He will not improve; the more he shoots the worse he will shoot, and it will become more difficult to teach him.

Section 2. Sight Adjustment

Men must be able to adjust their sights correctly and quickly. An error in adjustment so small that one can

[1] This chapter is taken from the "Nc Offic-ers' Manual, U. S. Army."

scarcely see it on the sight leaf is sufficient to cause a miss at an enemy at 500 yards and over.

Notice your rear sight. When the leaf is laid down the *battle sight* appears on top. This sight is set for 547 yards and is not adjustable. When the leaf is raised four sights come into view. The extreme range sight for 2,850 yards at the top of the leaf is seldom used. The open sight at the upper edge of the drift slide is adjustable from 1,400 to 2,750 yards. To set it the upper edge of the slide is made to correspond with the range reading on the leaf, and the slide is then clamped with the slide screw. This sight also is seldom used. The open sight at the bottom of the triangular opening in the drift slide is adjustable from 100 to 2,450 yards. To set it the index line at the lower corners of the triangle is set opposite the range graduation on the leaf and the slide clamped. This and the peep sight just below it are the sights most commonly used. To set the peep sight, the index lines on either side of the peephole are set opposite the range desired and the slide clamped.

Notice the scales for the various ranges on either side of the face of the leaf. The odd-numbered hundreds of yards are on the right and the even on the left. *The line below the number is the index line for that range.* Thus, to set the sight for 500 yards the index line of the slide is brought in exact line with the line on the leaf below the figure 5 and the slide clamped. To set for 550 yards the index lines of the slide are set half-way between the index lines on the leaf below the figure 5 on the right side and the figure 6 on the left side. Look at your sight carefully when setting it and take great pains to get it exact. An error in setting the width of one of the lines on the leaf will cause an error of about 8 inches in where your bullet will strike at 500 yards.

The *wind gauge* is adjusted by means of the windage screw at the right front end of the base of the sight. Each graduation on the wind-gauge scale is called a "point." For convenience in adjusting, the line of each third point on the scale is longer than the others. If you turn the windage screw so that the movable base moves to the right, you are taking right windage, which will cause your rifle to shoot more to the right.

It is seldom that a rifle will shoot correctly to the point aimed at at a given range with the sights adjusted exactly to the scale graduation for that range. If your sight is not correctly adjusted for your shooting and you wish to move it slightly to make it correct, remember to *move it in the direction you wish your shot to hit.* If you wish to shoot higher raise your sight. If to the right, move the wind gauge to the right. Always move your sight the correct amount in accordance with the following table:

Section 3. Table of Sight Corrections

Showing to what extent the point of impact is moved by a change of 25 yards in elevation or 1 point in windage

Range.	Correction by a change in elevation of 25 yards.	Correction by a change in windage of 1 point.
Yards.	*Inches.*	*Inches.*
100	0.72	4
200	1.62	8
300	2.79	12
400	4.29	16
500	6.22	20
600	8.59	24
800	15.43	32
1,000	25.08	

An easy rule to remember the windage correction by is: "A change of 1 point of wind changes the point of impact 4 inches for every 100 yards of range."

Copy this table and take it to the range with you.

Example of sight adjustment: Suppose you are firing at 500 yards. The first two or three shots show you that your shots are hitting about a foot below and a foot to the right of the center of the bull's-eye. From the above table you will see that if you will raise your sight 50 yards and move the wind gauge half a point to the left the rifle will be sighted so that if you aim correctly the bullets will hit well inside the bull's-eye.

Section 4. Aiming

Open sight: Always align your sights with the front sight squarely in the middle of the "U" or notch of the rear sight, and the top of the front sight even with the upper corners of the "U." (See Fig. 41-A.) All the sights on the rifle except the peep sight are open sights.

Peep sight: Always center the tip of the front sight in the center of the peephole when aiming with this sight. (See Fig. 41-B.)

Always aim below the bull's-eye. Never let your front sight appear to touch the bull's-eye in aiming. Try to see the same amount of white target between the top of the front sight and the bottom of the bull's-eye each time. The eye must be focused on the bull's-eye or mark and not on the front or rear sight.

Look at Figs. 41-A and B until your eye retains the memory of them, then try to duplicate the picture every time you aim. Aim consistently, always the same. Never change your aim; change your sight adjustment if your shots are not hitting in the right place.

A

B

FIG. 41

Section 5. Battle Sight

The battle sight is the open sight seen when the leaf is laid flat. It is adjusted for a range of 547 yards. It is intended to be used in battle when you get nearer to the enemy than 600 yards. Always aim at the belt of a standing enemy, or just below him if he is kneeling, sitting, or lying. On the target range this sight is used for rapid fire. With it the rifle shoots about 2 feet high at ranges between 200 and 400 yards, so you must

aim below the figure on the target "D" (page 183). Find out in your instruction practice just how much you must aim below to hit the figure.

Section 6. Trigger Squeeze

Use the first joint of the forefinger to squeeze the trigger. It is the most sensitive and best controlled portion of the body. As you place the rifle to your shoulder squeeze the trigger so as to pull it back about one-eighth of an inch, thus taking up the safety portion, or slack, of the pull. Then contract the trigger finger gradually, slowly and steadily increasing the pressure on the trigger while the aim is being perfected. Continue the gradual increase of pressure so that when the aim has become exact the additional pressure required to release the point of the sear can be given almost insensibly and without causing any deflection of the rifle. Put absolutely all your mind and will power into holding the rifle steady and squeezing the trigger off without disturbing the aim. Practice squeezing the trigger in this way every time you have your rifle in your hand until you can surely and quickly do it without a suspicion of a jerk.

By practice the soldier becomes familiar with the trigger squeeze of his rifle, and knowing this, he is able to judge at any time, within limits, what additional pressure is required for its discharge. By constant repetition of this exercise he should be able finally to squeeze the trigger to a certain point beyond which the slightest movement will release the sear. Having squeezed the trigger to this point, the aim is corrected, and, when true, the additional pressure is applied, the discharge follows and the bullet flies true to the mark.

Section 7. Firing Position

When in ranks at close order the positions are those described in the "Infantry Drill Regulations." When in extended order, or when firing alone, these positions may be modified somewhat to better suit the individual. The following remarks on the various positions are offered as suggestions whereby steady positions may be learned by the soldier.

Standing position: Face the target, then execute right half face. Plant the feet about 12 inches apart. As you raise the rifle to the shoulder lean very slightly backward just enough to preserve the perfect balance on both feet which the raising of the rifle has somewhat disturbed. Do not lean far back, and do not lean forward at all. If your body is out of balance it will be under strain and you will tremble. The right elbow should be at about the height of the shoulder. The left hand should grasp well around the stock and handguard in front of the rear sight, and the left elbow should be almost directly under the rifle. The right hand should do more than half the work of holding the rifle up and against the shoulder, the left hand only steadying and guiding the piece. Do not try to meet the recoil; let the whole body move back with it. Do not be afraid to press the jaw hard against the stock; this steadies the position, and the head goes back with the recoil and insures that your face is not hurt.

Kneeling position: Assume the position very much as described in the "Infantry Drill Regulations." Sit on the right heel. The right keen should point directly to the right, that is, along the firing line. The point of the left elbow should rest over the left knee. There is a flat place under the elbow which fits a flat place on the knee

and makes a solid rest. Lean the body well forward. This position is uncomfortable until practiced, when it quickly ceases to be uncomfortable.

Sitting position: Sit down half faced to the right, feet from 6 to 8 inches apart, knees bent, right knee slightly higher than the left, left leg pointed toward the target. Rest both elbows on the knees, hands grasping the piece the same as in the prone position. This is a very steady position, particularly if holes can be found or made in the ground for the heels.

Prone position and use of the gun sling: To adjust the sling for firing, unhook the straight strap of the sling and let it out as far as it will go. Adjust the loop so that when stretched along the bottom of the stock its rear end (bight) comes about opposite the comb of the stock. A small man needs a longer loop than a tall man. Lie down facing at an angle of about 60° to the right of the direction of the target. Spread the legs as wide apart as they will go with comfort. Thrust the left arm through between the rifle and the sling, and then back through the loop of the sling, securing the loop, by means of the keeper, around the upper left arm as high up as it will go. Pass the hand under and then over the sling from the left side, and grasp the stock and handguard just in rear of the lower band. Raise the right elbow off the ground, rolling slightly over on the left side. Place the butt to the shoulder and roll back into position, clamping the rifle hard and steady in the firing position. The rifle should rest deep down in the palm of the left hand with fingers almost around the handguard. Shift the left palm a little to the right or left until the rifle stands perfectly upright (no cant) without effort. The left elbow should rest on the ground directly under the rifle, and right elbow on the ground

about 5 inches to the right of a point directly under the stock. In this position the loop of the sling, starting at the lower band, passes to the right of the left wrist, and then around the left upper arm. The loop should be so tight that about 50 pounds tension is placed on it when the position is assumed. This position is uncomfortable until practiced, when it quickly ceases to be uncomfortable. It will be steadier if small holes can be found or dug in the ground for the elbows. In this position the sling binds the left forearm to the rifle and to the ground so that it forms a dead rest for the rifle, with a universal joint, the wrist, at its upper end. Also the rifle is so bound to the shoulder that the recoil is not felt at all. This is the steadiest of all firing positions.

The gun sling can also be used in this manner with advantage in the other positions.

Section 8. Calling the Shot

It is evident that the sights should be so adjusted at each range that the rifle will hit where you aim. In order to determine that the sights are so adjusted it is necessary that you shall know each time just where you were aiming on the target at the instant your rifle was discharged. If you know this and your rifle hits this point your rifle is correctly sighted. If your shot does not hit near this point, you should change your sight adjustment in accordance with the table of sight corrections on page 171.

No man can hold absolutely steady. The rifle trembles slightly, and the sights seem to wobble and move over the target. You try to squeeze off the last ounce of the trigger squeeze just as the sights move to the desired alignment under the bull's-eye. At this instant,

just before the recoil blots out a view of the sights and target, you should catch with your eye a pieture, as it were, of just where on the target your sights were aligned, and call to yourself or to the coach this point. This point is where your shot should strike if your sights are correctly adjusted, and if you have squeezed the trigger without disturbing your aim. Until a man can call his shots he is not a good shot, for he can never tell if his rifle is sighted right or not, or if a certain shot is a good one or only the result of luck.

Section 9. Coördination

Good marksmanship consists in learning thoroughly the details of—

Holding the rifle in the various positions.
Aiming.
Squeezing the trigger.
Calling the shot.
Adjusting the sights.

And, when these have been mastered in detail, then the coördination of them in the act of firing. This coordination consists in putting absolutely all of one's will power into an effort to hold the rifle steadily, especially in getting it to steady down when the aim is perfected; in getting the trigger squeezed off easily at the instant the rifle is steadiest and the aim perfected; in calling the shot at this instant; and, if the shot does not hit near the point called, then in adjusting the sights the correct amount so that the rifle will be sighted to hit where you aim.

Section 10. Advice to Riflemen

Before going to the range clean the rifle carefully, removing every trace of oil from the bore. This can

best be done with a rag saturated with gasoline. Put a light coat of oil on the bolt and cams. Blacken the front and rear sights with smoke from a burning candle or camphor or with liquid sight black.

Look through the bore and see that there is no obstruction in it.

Keep the rifle off the ground; the stock may absorb dampness, the sights may be injured, or the muzzle filled with dirt.

Watch your hold carefully and be sure to know where the line of sight is at discharge. It is only in this way that the habit of calling shots, which is essential to good shooting, can be acquired.

Study the conditions, adjust the sling, and set the sight before going to the firing point.

Look at the sight adjustment before each shot and see that it has not changed.

If sure of your hold and if the hit is not as called, determine and make FULL correction in elevation and windage to put the next shot in the bull's-eye.

Keep a written record of the weather conditions and the corresponding elevation and windage for each day's firing.

Less elevation will generally be required on hot days; on wet days; in a bright sunlight; with a 6 o'clock wind; or with a cold barrel.

More elevation will generally be required on cold days; on very dry days; with a 12 o'clock wind; with a hot barrel; in a dull or cloudy light.

The upper band should not be tight enough to bind the barrel.

Do not put a cartridge into the chamber until ready to fire. Do not place cartridges in the sun. They will get hot and shoot high.

Do not rub the eyes—especially the sighting eye.

In cold weather warm the trigger hand before shooting.

After shooting, clean the rifle carefully and then oil it to prevent rust.

Have a strong, clean cloth that will not tear and jam, properly cut to size, for use in cleaning.

Always clean the rifle from the breech, using a brass cleaning rod when available. An injury to the rifling at the muzzle causes the piece to shoot very irregularly.

Regular physical exercise, taken systematically, will cause a marked improvement in shooting.

Frequent practice of the "Position and aiming drills" is of the greatest help in preparing for shooting on the range.

Rapid firing: Success in rapid firing depends upon catching a quick and accurate aim, holding the piece firmly and evenly, and in squeezing the trigger without a jerk.

In order to give as much time as possible for aiming accurately, the soldier must practice taking position, loading with the clip, and working the bolt, so that no time will be lost in these operations. With constant practice all these movements may be made quickly and without false motions.

When the bolt handle is raised, it must be done with enough force to start the shell from the chamber; and when the bolt is pulled back, it must be with sufficient force to throw the empty shell well away from the chamber and far enough to engage the next cartridge.

In loading, use force enough to load each cartridge with one motion.

The aim must be caught quickly, and, once caught, must be held and the trigger squeezed steadily. Rapid

firing, as far as holding, aim, and squeezing the trigger are concerned, should be done with all the precision of slow fire. The gain in time should be in getting ready to fire, loading, and working the bolt.

Firing with rests: In order that the shooting may be uniform the piece should always be rested at the same point.

Section 11. The Course in Small-Arms Firing

The course in small-arms firing consists of—

(*a*) Nomenclature and care of rifle.
(*b*) Sighting drills.
(*c*) Position and aiming drills.
(*d*) Deflection and elevation correction drills.
(*e*) Gallery practice.
(*f*) Estimating distance drill.
(*g*) Individual known-distance firing, instruction practice.
(*h*) Individual known-distance firing, record practice.
(*i*) Long-distance practice.
(*j*) Practice with telescopic sights.
(*k*) Instruction combat practice.
(*l*) Combat practice.
(*m*) Proficiency test.

The regulations governing these are found in "Small-Arms Firing Manual, 1913." There should be several copies of this manual in every company.

Section 12. Targets

The accompanying plates show the details and size of the targets.

200 **TARGET PRACTICE.**

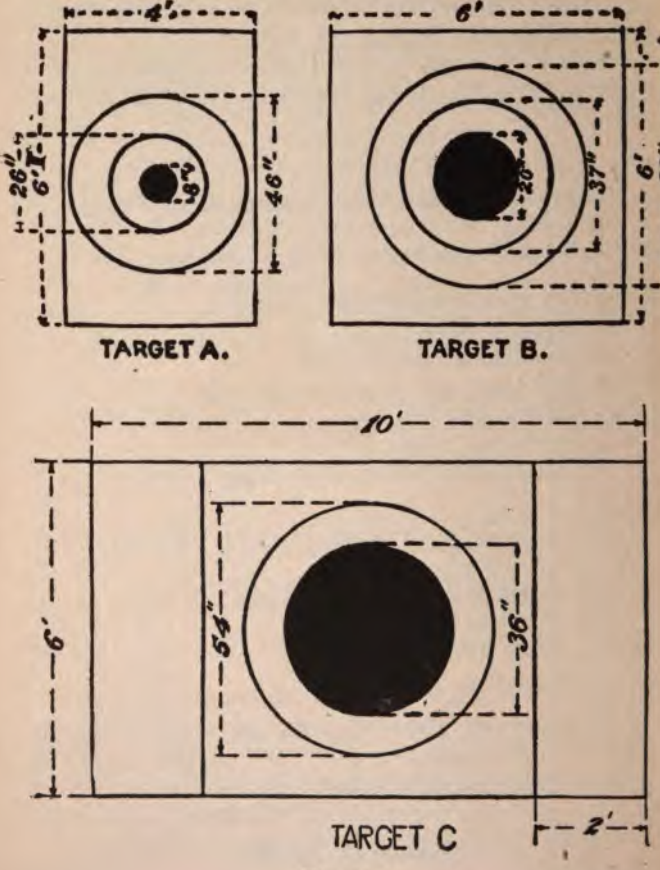
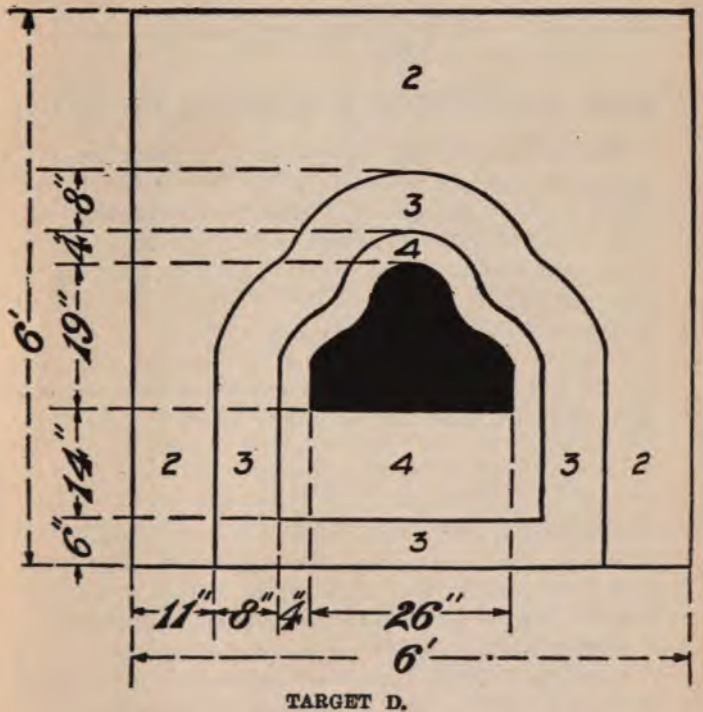


FIG. 42

TARGETS.



TARGET D.

FIG. 43

CHAPTER XIV

CARE OF CLOTHING, EQUIPMENT, AND RIFLE

You are responsible for the care of your clothing, equipment, and rifle according to the 84th article of war, which reads: "Any soldier who sells or wrongfully disposes of or willfully or through neglect injures any horse, arms, ammunition, accouterments, equipment, clothing, or other property issued for use in the military service shall be punished as a court-martial may direct."

It is plain, therefore, that it is the soldier's duty, and should be his pleasure, to keep everything issued to him clean and in a good state of preservation.

Clothing

You should take as good care of your uniform as you would of your best suit of civilian clothes. The better care you take of your clothing the longer it will last and the more it will add to your military appearance.

Each soldier is given his uniform.

Cleaning.—Grease spots and stains may be removed by rubbing with a woolen cloth saturated with benzine or gasoline. Carbona is also a good stain remover.

Spots can often be removed by putting a piece of paper over the spot and pressing with a hot flat iron.

Paint can be removed with turpentine. *Ink* may be removed with a solution of oxalic acid, rinsing at once with water.

Pressing the uniform once a week will add greatly to its appearance. Always place a moist clean cloth over the clothes and then press with a hot iron until the cloth is dry.

Canvas leggings should be washed when soiled. Always dry in the shade without wringing them out.

Service hat should be brushed frequently.

An extra uniform should be kept for inspection, parade, and when off duty. Remember a soldier is often judged by his appearance when on leave.

Buttons should always be securely sewed on. It is decidedly slovenly to see a soldier with buttons off his shirt or uniform.

Always keep your shirt and blouse buttoned up.

Shoes

Be sure that your shoes fit properly. Shoes should always be large enough to provide for the enlargement of the feet when carrying a pack and marching. The toes will be pushed forward almost half a size when the ordinary pack is being carried. The width can ordinarily be provided by the lacing.

Cleaning.—Your shoes should be kept polished both for looks and because the leather will be more pliable and will wear longer. A good quality of polish should be used. It is well to wash your shoes once in a while with soap and water to remove the accumulation as a result of polishing. To dry wet shoes never place them near a fire. They should be allowed to dry by evaporation. When you have two or more pairs of shoes it is a good thing to saturate one pair with neat's foot oil. The shoes should be wet and thoroughly dried before the oil is applied. Shoes so treated will not wet through.

Cloth Equipment

(Instructions issued by the Ordnance Department, July 12, 1915.)

"*General.*—All cloth equipment should be brushed frequently with a stiff bristle brush. A dry scrub brush may be used.

"It should be washed only under the direction and supervision of an officer.

"During ordinary garrison duty it should rarely be necessary to wash the equipment.

"When the equipment becomes soiled a light local washing will frequently be sufficient, but when dirty it should unhesitatingly be given a good thorough washing—otherwise it may be expected that it will become insanitary and rot.

"During field service it is to be expected that the equipment will become soiled much more rapidly. Always on return to garrison from field service and as opportunity offers in the field, equipment should be thoroughly washed."

How to Wash.—Soap solution. Dissolve one cake of H. & H. soap in 4½ quarts of hot water. Brush the equipment thoroughly to remove dust and mud. Spread the belt, haversack, etc., out on a clean board and apply the solution with a clean scrub brush. After lathering, wash off with clean water. *Always dry in the shade,* so as to prevent bleaching.

Mess Kit

After every meal wash your mess kit in soap and hot water and rinse in clean hot water. If you do not have a clean towel to dry your mess kit put it in the sun to dry. As the sun is a good germ killer it is well to leave

your mess kit in the sun frequently. Remember a dirty or greasy mess kit is sure to attract flies and germs. Then, too, you will enjoy your meals much better if your mess kit is clean.

With a nail or sharp instrument put a mark on each piece of your mess kit so that you will recognize it if someone takes it.

The Rifle

Your rifle is your best friend; therefore be sure that it is properly cared for. Your rifle may save your life; therefore as you value your life so treat your rifle. Keep in mind that more pieces are spoiled by carelessness than through use.

The Parts of the Rifle

The rifle is called the United States Magazine Rifle, model 1903, caliber .30. The piece without the bayonet weighs 8.69 pounds, and the bayonet and scabbard weigh 1 pound. The length of the rifle is 43″; the length of the bayonet is 20″; the length of the blade of the bayonet is 16″.

The rifle is so constructed that the various parts can easily be taken apart and put together again. *Never, however, take your rifle apart except with the express permission of a commissioned officer.* As soon as you are familiar with the handling of your piece you should ask a commissioned officer to show you how to take the butt apart and how to take out the breech spring.

The bore is the most important part of the rifle. The greatest care has been exercised in manufacturing this so as to obtain the highest degree of accuracy.

To clean the bore or inside of the barrel, remove the bolt; place the muzzle on a board if no rack is provided. Always insert the cleaning rod from the breech end.

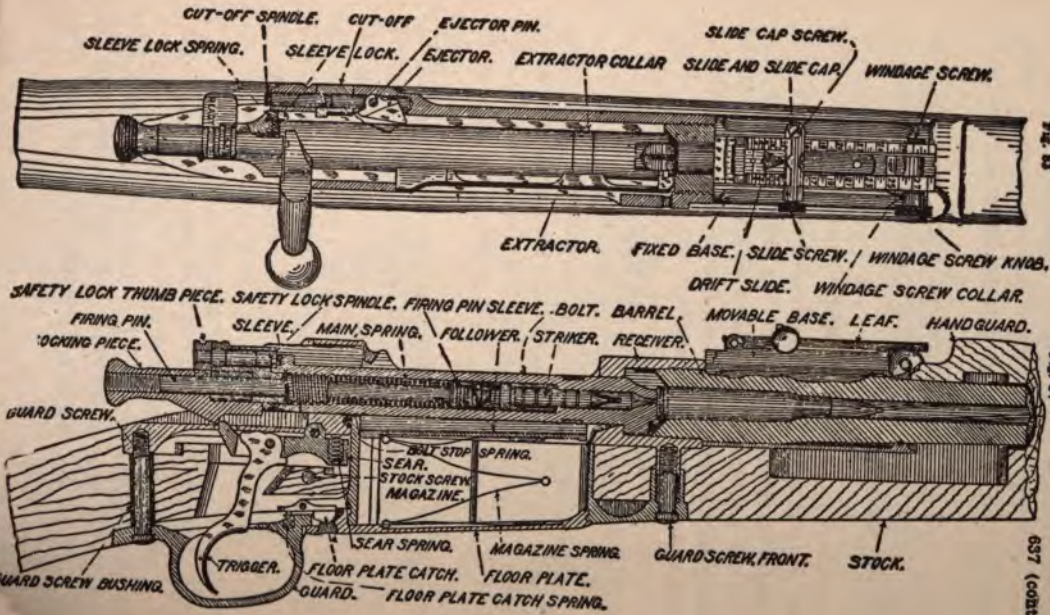

CUT-OFF SPINDLE.
CUT-OFF
EJECTOR PIN.
SLEEVE LOCK SPRING.
SLEEVE LOCK.
EJECTOR.
EXTRACTOR COLLAR
SLIDE CAP SCREW.
SLIDE AND SLIDE CAP.
WINDAGE SCREW.
Fig. 83
EXTRACTOR.
FIXED BASE.
SLIDE SCREW.
WINDAGE SCREW KNOB.
DRIFT SLIDE.
WINDAGE SCREW COLLAR.
SAFETY LOCK THUMB PIECE.
SAFETY LOCK SPINDLE.
FIRING PIN SLEEVE.
BOLT.
BARREL
MOVABLE BASE.
LEAF.
HANDGUARD.
FIRING PIN.
SLEEVE.
MAIN SPRING.
FOLLOWER.
STRIKER.
RECEIVER.
Fig. 84
GUARD SCREW.
BOLT STOP SPRING.
SEAR.
STOCK SCREW.
MAGAZINE.
SEAR SPRING.
MAGAZINE SPRING.
GUARD SCREW, FRONT.
STOCK.
GUARD SCREW BUSHING.
TRIGGER.
FLOOR PLATE CATCH.
FLOOR PLATE.
GUARD.
FLOOR PLATE CATCH SPRING.
637 (COPYRIGHT)

FIG. 44

Use patches of soft rag cut into squares about 1½" square. By running the cleaning rod with a rag attached through the bore the dust will be removed.

If the piece is fouled as a result of discharging, the powder fouling can be removed by scrubbing the bore with the soda solution (hot) furnished by the Ordnance Department.

To remove the metal fouling, first remove the powder fouling. Then plug the barrel at the breech with a cork or cloth, slip a 2" section of rubber hose over the muzzle and fill with the standard Ordnance Department solution. Let it remain for half an hour, then remove the solution and swab out with the soda solution.

After the piece is thoroughly cleaned take a clean patch of cloth and moisten with sperm oil and scrub the bore thoroughly.

All metal parts of the rifle should be kept clean at all times. Cams and bearings should be frequently oiled, but it is not necessary to soak with oil.

After the rifle has been wet by rain or by dew it should be wiped dry at once. The stock should be rubbed with linseed oil once a month.

Pointers

1. Clean your rifle at least once each day.
2. Never point a rifle at anyone unless you intend to shoot him.
3. Never put away a rifle that has been fired or that has been wet without first thoroughly cleaning it.
4. Do not try to brighten up the bluish parts of the piece.
5. Never let your rifle bore become pitted.
6. A good soldier, like a good sportsman, loves his rifle.

CHAPTER XV

THE SOLDIER'S HEALTH

A soldier's health is a soldier's success. Keep in mind that a sick soldier not only makes one less to shoot and to throw grenades, but is a burden because he must be cared for. "A dead soldier is of less burden than a sick soldier."

What is, perhaps, to you fully as important and interesting is that if your health is good you run far less chance of catching a disease and stand a hundred per cent better chance of recovering from a wound. In the Spanish-American War for every man who was killed more than five died from disease.

A Few Health Hints

Keep the bowels open.—Make it a practice to go to the latrine or toilet at least once each day. If you go to the toilet at about the same time each day you will be surprised to find that you feel a hundred per cent better. Never let a day go by without a passage. If you do not have one see one of the medical corps and ask him for a laxative.

Remember that there is nothing that so pleases the germs of various diseases as the constipated person. In this condition you are far more apt to catch diseases.

Cleanliness is the worst enemy of disease. Flies carry germs. Flies flourish in dirt. Therefore, keep everything clean and leave no food particles about, and you will not be bothered with flies.

Brush your teeth after each meal if possible and always before going to bed.

Do not pick your nose with your fingers. It makes your nose a good place for germs.

Do not sweep dry dust.—Always sprinkle the floor or company street.

Don't let anyone use your mess kit. Always keep your mess kit clean. Put the mess kit in the sun when possible. The sun is a good germ killer.

Don't drink water from unknown streams or wells. If necessity requires you to drink such water always boil it.

Don't let dogs or other animals lick your hands.

Don't drink stuff bought from a peddler.

Always wash your hands before eating and after coming from the latrine.

Keep your teeth in good condition by seeing a good dentist every few months.

Don't rub your eyes with your fingers.

Boil your clothes before washing them.

Use your own towel.

Use your own blanket.

Don't smoke another man's pipe.

Don't touch wounds except with the first-aid packet.

Be sure the company barber scalds his razors and soap. Don't let him use a caustic stick on you.

If you feel sick ask the first sergeant to put your name on the sick report. Serious diseases often start with slight illness.

Keep on the watch and see that your comrades report their sickness.

Don't spit in your tent and don't let others do so.

After a hike rinse your mouth and throat with salt and water. Breathe a little of the solution into your nose.

Never go barefooted. This is the way many germs are gathered.

If you discover *that you have a venereal disease* report to your captain or lieutenant at once.

Keep away from prostitutes. They are all diseased and will give you germs that you will pass on to your wife and children years from now.

Let liquor alone. Drink nine times out of ten leads to houses of prostitution and damnation to any man who becomes its victim.

Venereal Diseases

War Department orders regarding venereal diseases. General Orders No. 31, War Department, 1912, direct that no enlisted man "absent from duty on account of disease resulting from his own intemperate use of drugs or alcoholic liquors or *other misconduct* shall receive pay for the period of such absence."

General Orders, No. 71, War Department, 1913, amending G. O., 17, W. D., 1912, direct that,

> "Commanding officers will require that men who expose themselves to the danger of contracting venereal disease shall at once upon their return to camp or garrison report to the hospital or dispensary for the application of such cleansing and prophylaxis as may be prescribed by the Surgeon General. Any soldier who fails to comply with these instructions shall be brought to trial by court-martial for neglect of duty."

A medical officer and each organization commander are required to make two physical inspections of all the enlisted men of the command (except married men of good character) each month to observe the state of personal cleanliness and detect venereal diseases.

CHAPTER XVI

SANITATION AND CLEANLINESS IN CAMP

The soldier's part in making the camp a decent place in which to live is most important. It's the dirty, untidy, don't-care soldiers who cause most of the sickness in a camp.

It's hard to believe that any real self-respecting man can stoop so low as to be willing to put up with filth. That's just exactly what you do if you tolerate uncleanliness on the part of your fellow soldiers. A man who doesn't willingly take a bath should be made to do so by his comrades.

Your tent is your home while in the field as a soldier. Therefore see to it that it is always clean and in order. The tent walls should be rolled up every morning. In good weather your bedding and clothes should get a good sun bath.

The kitchen is a most important place to keep clean. *It is the opinion of the authors that to be detailed as kitchen police should be an honor and not a punishment.* Only the cleanest and neatest men in a company should be detailed to the kitchen. Everyone working in the kitchen should have scrupulously clean hands and finger nails. *When eating* be careful not to spill any of the food. *Particles of food bring flies, and flies bring disease.* After eating always empty any food that you have left into the proper receptacle. Then wash your mess kit in hot water. If possible dry it in the sun—Nature's drying cloth.

CHAPTER XVII

ARTICLES OF WAR

When you enter the military service you become subject to military law. The Articles of War is the law governing the U. S. Army.

The following from the Articles of War should be read over carefully, as it will give you an idea of your rights as well as the things you must or must not do so long as you remain in the military service of the United States.

Don't violate any of these articles and you will be a better soldier and avoid trouble for yourself.

Certain Articles of War to be read and explained to enlisted men. Articles 1, 2, and 29, 54 to 96 inclusive, and 104 to 109 inclusive, shall be read and explained to every soldier at the time of his enlistment or muster in, or within six days thereafter, and shall be read and explained once every six months to the soldiers of every garrison, regiment, or company in the service of the United States. (Art. 110.)

"*Article* 1. *Definitions:* The following words when used in these articles shall be construed in the sense indicated in this article, unles the context shows that a different sense is intended, namely:

"(a) The word 'officer' shall be construed to refer to a commissioned officer;

"(b) The word 'soldier' shall be construed as including a noncommissioned officer, a private, or any other enlisted man;

"(c) The word 'company' shall be understood as including a troop or battery; and

"(d) The word 'battalion' shall be understood as including a squadron.

"*Art. 2. Persons subject to military law.* The following persons are subject to these articles and shall be understood as included in the term 'any person subject to military law,' or 'persons subject to military law,' whenever used in these articles: *Provided,* That nothing contained in this act, except as specifically provided in article 2, subparagraph (c), shall be construed to apply to any person under the United States naval jurisdiction, unless otherwise specifically provided by law.

"(a) All officers and soldiers belonging to the Regular Army of the United States; all volunteers, from the dates of their muster or acceptance into the military service of the United States; and all other persons lawfully called, drafted, or ordered into, or to duty or for training in, the said service, from the dates they are required by the terms of the call, draft, or order to obey the same;

"(b) Cadets;

"(c) Officers and soldiers of the Marine Corps when detached for service with the armies of the United States by order of the President: *Provided,* That an officer or soldier of the Marine Corps when so detached may be tried by military court-martial for an offense committed against the laws for the government of the naval service prior to his detachment and for an offense committed against these articles he may be tried by a naval court-martial after such detachment ceases;

"(d) All retainers to the camp and all persons accompanying or serving with the armies of the United States without the territorial jurisdiction of the United States, and in time of war all such retainers and persons accom-

panying or serving with the armies of the United States in the field, both within and without the territorial jurisdiction of the United States, though not otherwise subject to these articles;

"(e) All persons under sentence adjudged by court-martial;

"(f) All persons admitted into the Regular Army Soldiers' Home at Washington, D. C.

"*Art.* 29. *ENLISTMENT WITHOUT DISCHARGE. Any soldier who, without having first received a regular discharge, again enlists in the Army, or in the militia when in the service of the United States, or in the Navy or Marine Corps of the United States, or in any foreign army, shall be deemed to have deserted the service of the United States; and, where the enlistment is in one of the forces of the United States mentioned above, to have fraudulently enlisted therein.*

"*Art.* 54. *Fraudulent enlistment.* Any person who shall procure himself to be enlisted in the military service of the United States by means of willful misrepresentation or concealment as to his qualifications for enlistment, and shall receive pay or allowances under such enlistment, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 55. *Officer making unlawful enlistment.* Any officer who knowingly enlists or musters into the military service any person whose enlistment or muster in is prohibited by law, regulations, or orders, shall be dismissed from the service or suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 56. *Muster rolls—False muster.* At every muster of a regiment, troop, battery, or company the commanding officer thereof shall give to the mustering officer certificates, signed by himself, stating how long absent offic- have been absent and the reasons of their absen-

the commanding officer of every troop, battery, or company shall give like certificates, stating how long absent noncommissioned officers and private soldiers have been absent and the reasons of their absence. Such reasons and time of absence shall be inserted in the muster rolls opposite the names of the respective absent officers and soldiers, and the certificates, together with the muster rolls, shall be transmitted by the mustering officer to the Department of War as speedily as the distance of the place and muster will admit. Any officer who knowingly makes a false muster of man or animal, or who signs or directs or allows the signing of any muster roll knowing the same to contain a false muster or false statement as to the absence or pay of an officer or soldier, or who wrongfully takes money or other consideration on mustering in a regiment, company, or other organization, or on signing muster rolls, or who knowingly musters as an officer or soldier a person who is not such officer or soldier, shall be dismissed from the service and suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 57. *False returns—Omission to render returns.* Every officer commanding a regiment, an independent troop, battery, or company, or a garrison, shall, in the beginning of every month, transmit through the proper channels, to the Department of War, an exact return of the same, specifying the names of the officers then absent from their posts, with the reasons for and the time of their absence. Every officer whose duty it is to render to the War Department or other superior authority a return of the state of the troops under his command, or of the arms, ammunition, clothing, funds, or other property thereunto belonging, who knowingly makes a

shall be dismissed from the service

ishment as a court-martial may

direct. And any officer who, through neglect or design, omits to render such return shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"B. Desertion; Absence Without Leave

"*Art.* 58. *Desertion.* Any person subject to military law who deserts or attempts to desert the service of the United States shall, if the offense be committed in time of war, suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct, and, if the offense be committed at any other time, any punishment, excepting death, that a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 59. *Advising or aiding another to desert.* Any person subject to military law who advises or persuades or knowingly assists another to desert the service of the United States shall, if the offense be committed in time of war, suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct, and, if the offense be committed at any other time, any punishment, excepting death, that a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 60. *Entertaining a deserter.* Any officer who, after having discovered that a soldier in his command is a deserter from the military or naval service or from the Marine Corps, retains such deserter in his command without informing superior authority or the commander of the organization to which the deserter belongs, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art* 61. *Absence without leave.* Any person subject to military law who fails to repair at the fixed time to the properly appointed place of duty, or goes from the same without proper leave, or absents himself from his command, guard, quarters, station, or camp without proper leave, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"C. Disrespect; Insubordination; Mutiny

"*Art.* 62. *Disrespect toward the President, Vice-president, Congress, Secretary of War, governors, legislatures.* Any officer who uses contemptuous or disrespectful words against the President, Vice-president, the Congress of the United States, the Secretary of War, or the governor or legislature of any State, Territory, or other possession of the United States in which he is quartered shall be dismissed from the service or suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct. Any other person subject to military law who so offends shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 63. *Disrespect toward superior officers.* Any person subject to military law who behaves himself with disrespect toward his superior officer shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 64. *Assaulting or willfully disobeying superior officer.* Any person subject to military law who, on any pretense whatsoever, strikes his superior officer or draws or lifts up any weapon or offers any violence against him, being in the execution of his office, or willfully disobeys any lawful command of his superior officer, shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 65. *Insubordinate conduct toward noncommissioned officer.* Any soldier who strikes or assaults, or who attempts or threatens to strike or assault, or willfully disobeys the lawful order of a noncommissioned officer while in the execution of his office, or uses threatening or insulting language, or behaves in an insubordinate or disrespectful manner toward a noncommissioned officer while in the execution of his office, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 66. *Mutiny or sedition.* Any person subject to military law who attempts to create or who begins, excites, causes, or joins in any mutiny or sedition in any company, party, post, camp, detachment, guard, or other command shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 67. *Failure to suppress mutiny or sedition.* Any officer or soldier who, being present at any mutiny or sedition, does not use his utmost endeavor to suppress the same, or knowing or having reason to believe that a mutiny or sedition is to take place, does not without delay give information thereof to his commanding officer shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 68. *Quarrels; frays; disorders.* All officers and noncommissioned officers have power to part and quell all quarrels, frays, and disorders among persons subject to military law and to order officers who take part in the same into arrest, and other persons subject to military law who take part in the same into arrest or confinement as circumstances may require, until their proper superior officer is acquainted therewith. And whosoever, being so ordered, refuses to obey such officer or noncommissioned officer or draws a weapon upon or otherwise threatens or does violence to him shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"D. Arrest; Confinement

"*Art.* 69. *Arrest or confinement of accused persons.* An officer charged with crime or with a serious offense under these articles shall be placed in arrest by the commanding officer, and in exceptional cases an officer so charged may be placed in confinement by the same authority. A soldier charged with crime or with a serious

offense under these articles shall be placed in confinement, and when charged with a minor offense he may be placed in arrest. Any other person subject to military law charged with crime or with a serious offense under these articles shall be placed in confinement or in arrest, as circumstances may require; and when charged with a minor offense such person may be placed in arrest. Any person placed in arrest under the provisions of this article shall thereby be restricted to his barracks, quarters, or tent, unless such limits shall be enlarged by proper authority. Any officer who breaks his arrest or who escapes from confinement before he is set at liberty by proper authority shall be dismissed from the service or suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct; and any other person subject to military law who escapes from confinement or who breaks his arrest before he is set at liberty by proper authority shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 70. Investigation of and action upon charges.* No person put in arrest shall be continued in confinement more than eight days, or until such time as a court-martial can be assembled. When any person is put in arrest for the purpose of trial, except at remote military posts or stations, the officer by whose order he is arrested shall see that a copy of the charges on which he is to be tried is served upon him within eight days after his arrest, and that he is brought to trial within ten days thereafter, unless the necessities of the service prevent such trial; and then he shall be brought to trial within thirty days after the expiration of said ten days. If a copy of the charges be not served, or the arrested person be not brought to trial, as herein required, the arrest

But persons released from arrest

this article, may be tried,

service shall permit, within twelve months after such release from arrest: *Provided,* That in time of peace no person shall, against his objection, be brought to trial before a general court-martial within a period of five days subsequent to the service of charges upon him.

"*Art. 71. Refusal to receive and keep prisoners.* No provost marshal or commander of a guard shall refuse to receive or keep any prisoner committed to his charge by an officer belonging to the forces of the United States, provided the officer committing shall, at the time, deliver an account in writing signed by himself, of the crime or offense charged against the prisoner. Any officer or soldier so refusing shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 72. Report of prisoners received.* Every commander of a guard to whose charge a prisoner is committed shall, within twenty-four hours after such confinement, or as soon as he is relieved from his guard, report in writing to the commanding officer the name of such prisoner, the offense charged against him, and the name of the officer committing him; and if he fails to make such report he shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 73. Releasing prisoner without proper authority.* Any person subject to military law who, without proper authority, releases any prisoner duly committed to his charge, or who, through neglect or design, suffers any prisoner so committed to escape, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 74. Delivery of offender to civil authorities.* When any person subject to military law, except one who is held by the military authorities to answer, or who is awaiting trial or result of trial, or who is undergoing sentence for a crime or offense punishable under t

articles, is accused of a crime or offense committed within the geographical limits of the States of the Union and the District of Columbia, and punishable by the laws of the land, the commanding officer is required, except in time of war, upon application duly made, to use his utmost endeavor to deliver over such accused person to the civil authorities, or to aid the officers of justice in apprehending and securing him, in order that he may be brought to trial. Any commanding officer who upon such application refuses or willfully neglects, except in time of war, to deliver over such accused person to the civil authorities or to aid the officers of justice in apprehending and securing him, shall be dismissed from the service or suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"When under the provisions of this article delivery is made to the civil authorities of an offender undergoing sentence of a court-martial, such delivery, if followed by conviction, shall be held to interrupt the execution of the sentence of the court-martial, and the offender shall be returned to military custody, after having answered to the civil authorities for his offense, for the completion of the said court-martial sentence.

"E. War Offenses

"*Art. 75. Misbehavior before the enemy.* Any officer or soldier who misbehaves himself before the enemy, runs away, or shamefully abandons or delivers up any fort, post, camp, guard, or other command which it is his duty to defend, or speaks words inducing others to do the like, or casts away his arms or ammunition, or quits his post or colors to plunder or pillage, or by any means whatsoever occasions false alarms in camp, garrison, or quarters, shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 76. Subordinates compelling commander to surrender.* If any commander of any garrison, fort, post, camp, guard, or other command is compelled by the officers or soldiers under his command to give it up to the enemy or to abandon it, the officers or soldiers so offending shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 77. Improper use of countersign.* Any person subject to military law who makes known the parole or countersign to any person not entitled to receive it according to the rules and discipline of war, or gives a parole or countersign different from that which he received, shall, if the offense be committed in time of war, suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 78. Forcing a safeguard.* Any person subject to military law who, in time of war, forces a safeguard shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 79. Captured property to be secured for public service.* All public property taken from the enemy is the property of the United States and shall be secured for the service of the United States, and any person subject to military law who neglects to secure such property or is guilty of wrongful appropriation thereof shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art. 80. Dealing in captured or abandoned property.* Any person subject to military law who buys, sells, trades, or in any way deals in or disposes of captured or abandoned property, whereby he shall receive or expect any profit, benefit, or advantage to himself or to any other person directly or indirectly connected with himself, or who fails whenever such property comes into his possession or custody or within his control to give notice thereof

to the proper authority and to turn over such property to the proper authority without delay, shall, on conviction thereof, be punished by fine or imprisonment, or by such other punishment as a court-martial, military commission, or other military tribunal may adjudge, or by any or all of said penalties.

"*Art.* 81. *Relieving, corresponding with, or aiding the enemy.* Whosoever relieves the enemy with arms, ammunition, supplies, money, or other thing, or knowingly harbors or protects or holds correspondence with or gives intelligence to the enemy, either directly or indirectly, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial or military commission may direct.

"*Art.* 82. *Spies.* Any person who in time of war shall be found lurking or acting as a spy in or about any of the fortifications, posts, quarters, or encampments of any of the armies of the United States, or elsewhere, shall be tried by a general court-martial or by a military commission, and shall, on conviction thereof, suffer death.

"F. Miscellaneous Crimes and Offenses

"*Art.* 83. *Military property—Willful or negligent loss, damage, or wrongful disposition of.* Any person subject to military law who willfully or through neglect suffers to be lost, spoiled, damaged, or wrongfully disposed of, any military property belonging to the United States shall make good the loss or damage and suffer such punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 84. *Waste or unlawful disposition of military property issued to soldiers.* Any soldier who sells or wrongfully disposes of or willfully or through neglect injures or loses any horse, arms, ammunition, accouterments, equipment, clothing, or other property issued for

use in the military service, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 85. *Drunk on duty.* Any officer who is found drunk on duty shall, if the offense be committed in time of war, be dismissed from the service and suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct; and if the offense be committed in time of peace, he shall be punished as a court-martial may direct. Any person subject to military law, except an officer, who is found drunk on duty shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 86. *Misbehavior of sentinel.* Any sentinel who is found drunk or sleeping upon his post, or who leaves it before he is regularly relieved, shall, if the offense be committed in time of war, suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct; and if the offense be committed in time of peace, he shall suffer any punishment, except death, that a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 87. *Personal interest in sale of provisions.* Any officer commanding in any garrison, fort, barracks, camp, or other place where troops of the United States may be serving who, for his private advantage, lays any duty or imposition upon or is interested in the sale of any victuals or other necessaries of life brought into such garrison, fort, barracks, camp, or other place for the use of the troops, shall be dismissed from the service and suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 88. *Intimidation of persons bringing provisions.* Any person subject to military law who abuses, intimidates, does violence to, or wrongfully interferes with any person bringing provisions, supplies, or other necessaries to the camp, garrison, or quarters of the forces of the United States shall suffer such punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 89. *Good order to be maintained and wrongs re-*

dressed. All persons subject to military law are to behave themselves orderly in quarters, garrison, camp, and on the march; and any person subject to military law who commits any waste or spoil, or willfully destroys any property whatsoever (unless by order of his commanding officer), or commits any kind of depredation or riot, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct. Any commanding officer who, upon complaint made to him, refuses or omits to see reparation made to the party injured, insofar as the offender's pay shall go toward such reparation, as provided for in article 105, shall be dismissed from the service or otherwise punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 90. *Provoking speeches or gestures.* No person subject to military law shall use any reproachful or provoking speeches or gestures to another; and any person subject to military law who offends against the provisions of this article shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 91. *Dueling.* Any person subject to military law who fights or promotes or is concerned in or connives at fighting a duel, or who, having knowledge of a challenge sent or about to be sent, fails to report the fact promptly to the proper authority, shall, if an officer, be dismissed from the service or suffer such other punishment as a court-martial may direct; and if any other person subject to military law, shall suffer such punishment as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 92. *MURDER—RAPE. Any person subject to military law who commits murder or rape shall suffer death or imprisonment for life, as a court-martial may direct; but no person shall be tried by court-martial for murder or rape committed within the geographical limits*

of the States of the Union and the District of Columbia in time of peace.

"*Art.* 93. *Various crimes.* Any person subject to military law who commits manslaughter, mayhem, arson, burglary, robbery, larceny, embezzlement, perjury, assault with intent to commit any felony, or assault with intent to do bodily harm, shall be punished as a court-martial may direct.

"*Art.* 94. *Frauds against the Government.* Any person subject to military law who makes or causes to be made any claim against the United States or any officer thereof, knowing such claim to be false or fraudulent; or

"Who presents or causes to be presented to any person in the civil or military service thereof, for approval or payment, any claim against the United States or any officer thereof, knowing such claim to be false or fraudulent; or

"Who enters into any agreement or conspiracy to defraud the United States by obtaining, or aiding others to obtain, the allowance or payment of any false or fraudulent claim; or

"Who, for the purpose of obtaining, or aiding others to obtain, the approval, allowance, or payment of any claim against the United States or against any officer thereof, makes or uses, or procures, or advises the making or use of, any writing or other paper, knowing the same to contain any false or fraudulent statements; or

"Who, for the purpose of obtaining, or aiding others to obtain, the approval, allowance, or payment of any claim against the United States or any officer thereof, makes, or procures, or advises the making of, any oath to any fact or to any writing or other paper, knowing such oath to be false; or

"Who, for the purpose of obtaining or aiding others

to obtain, the approval, allowance, or payment of any claim against the United States or any officer thereof, forges or counterfeits, or procures, or advises the forging or counterfeiting of any signature upon any writing or other paper, or uses, or procures, or advises the use of any such signature, knowing the same to be forged or counterfeited; or

"Who, having charge, possession, custody, or control of any money or other property of the United States, furnished or intended for the military service thereof, knowingly delivers, or causes to be delivered, to any person having authority to receive the same, any amount thereof less than that for which he receives a certificate or receipt; or

"Who, being authorized to make or deliver any paper certifying the receipt of any property of the United States furnished or intended for the military service thereof, makes or delivers to any person such writing, without having full knowledge of the truth of the statements therein contained and with intent to defraud the United States; or

"Who steals, embezzles, knowingly and willfully misappropriates, applies to his own use or benefit, or wrongfully or knowingly sells or disposes of any ordnance, arms, equipments, ammunition, clothing, subsistence stores, money, or other property of the United States furnished or intended for the military service thereof; or

"Who knowingly purchases or receives in pledge for any obligation or indebtedness from any soldier, officer, or other person who is a part of or employed in said forces or service, any ordnance, arms, equipment, ammunition, clothing, subsistence stores, or other property of the United States, such soldier, officer, or other person not having lawful right to sell or pledge the same;

"Shall, on conviction thereof, be punished by fine or imprisonment, or by such other punishment as a court-martial may adjudge, or by any or all of said penalties. And if any person, being guilty of any of the offenses aforesaid while in the military service of the United States, receives his discharge or is dismissed from the service, he shall continue to be liable to be arrested and held for trial and sentence by a court-martial in the same manner and to the same extent as if he had not received such discharge nor been dismissed.

"*Art.* 95. *Conduct unbecoming an officer and gentleman.* Any officer or cadet who is convicted of conduct unbecoming an officer and a gentleman shall be dismissed from the service.

"*Art* 96. *General article.* Though not mentioned in these articles, all disorders and neglects to the prejudice of good order and military discipline, all conduct of a nature to bring discredit upon the military service, and all crimes or offenses not capital, of which persons subject to military law may be guilty, shall be taken cognizance of by a general or special or summary court-martial, according to the nature and degree of the offense, and punished at the discretion of such court.

"V. Miscellaneous Provisions

"*Art.* 104. *Disciplinary powers of commanding officers.* Under such regulations as the President may prescribe, and which he may from time to time revoke, alter, or add to, the commanding officer of any detachment, company, or higher command may, for minor offenses not denied by the accused, impose disciplinary punishments upon persons of his command without the intervention of a court-martial, unless the accused demands trial by court-martial.

"The disciplinary punishments authorized by this article may include admonition, reprimand, withholding of privileges, extra fatigue, and restriction to certain specified limits, but shall not include forfeiture of pay or confinement under guard. A person punished under authority of this article who deems his punishment unjust or disproportionate to the offense may, through the proper channel, appeal to the next superior authority, but may in the meantime be required to undergo the punishment adjudged. The commanding officer who imposes the punishment, his successor in command, and superior authority shall have power to mitigate or remit any unexecuted portion of the punishment. The imposition and enforcement of disciplinary punishment under authority of this article for any act or omission shall not be a bar to trial by court-martial for a crime or offense growing out of the same act or omission; but the fact that a disciplinary punishment has been enforced may be shown by the accused upon trial, and when so shown shall be considered in determining the measure of punishment to be adjudged in the event of a finding of guilty.

"*Art.* 105. *Injuries to person or property—Redress of.* Whenever complaint is made to any commanding officer that damage has been done to the property of any person or that his property has been wrongfully taken by persons subject to military law, such complaint shall be investigated by a board consisting of any number of officers from one to three, which board shall be convened by the commanding officer and shall have, for the purpose of such investigation, power to summon witnesses and examine them upon oath or affirmation, to receive depositions or other documentary evidence, and to assess the damages sustained against the responsible parties. The assessment of damages made by such board shall be

subject to the approval of the commanding officer, and in the amount approved by him shall be stopped against the pay of the offenders. And the order of such commanding officer directing stoppages herein authorized shall be conclusive on any disbursing officer for the payment by him to the injured parties of the stoppages so ordered.

"Where the offenders can not be ascertained, but the organization or detachment to which they belong is known, stoppages to the amount of damages inflicted may be made and assessed in such proportion as may be deemed just upon the individual members thereof who are shown to have been present with such organization or detachment at the time the damages complained of were inflicted as determined by the approved findings of the board.

"*Art.* 106. *Arrest of deserters by civil officials.* It shall be lawful for any civil officer having authority under the laws of the United States, or of any State, Territory, District, or possession of the United States, to arrest offenders, summarily to arrest a deserter from the military service of the United States and deliver him into the custody of the military authorities of the United States.

"*Art.* 107. *Soldiers to make good time lost.* Every soldier who in an existing and subsequent enlistment deserts the service of the United States or without proper authority absents himself from his organization, station, or duty for more than one day, or who is confined for more than one day under sentence, or while awaiting trial and disposition of his case, if the trial results in conviction, or through the intemperate use of drugs or alcoholic liquor, or through disease or injury the result of his own misconduct, renders himself unable for more than day to perform duty, shall be liable to serve, a

return to a full-duty status, for such period as shall, with the time he may have served prior to such desertion, unauthorized absence, confinement, or inability to perform duty, amount to the full term of that part of his enlistment period which he is required to serve with his organization before being furloughed to the Army Reserve.

"*Art.* 108. *Soldiers—Separation from the service.* No enlisted man, lawfully inducted into the military service of the United States, shall be discharged from said service without a certificate of discharge, signed by a field officer of the regiment or other organization to which the enlisted man belongs or by the commanding officer when no such field officer is present; and no enlisted man shall be discharged from said service before his term of service has expired, except by order of the President, the Secretary of War, the commanding officer of a department, or by sentence of a general court-martial.

"*Art.* 109. *Oath of enlistment.* At the time of his enlistment every soldier shall take the following oath or affirmation: 'I, ———, do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the United States of America; that I will serve them honestly and faithfully against all their enemies whomsoever; and that I will obey the orders of the President of the United States and the orders of the officers appointed over me, according to the Rules and Articles of War.' This oath or affirmation may be taken before any officer."

CHAPTER XVIII

COURTS-MARTIAL AND PUNISHMENT

All cases of violations of the Articles of War are tried by courts-martial. There are three kinds of courts-martial: *Summary court,* consisting of one officer; *Special court,* consisting of not less than three nor more than five officers and a judge advocate; and *General court,* consisting of not less than five nor more than thirteen officers, a judge advocate and an assistant judge advocate.

Judge advocate's duty toward the accused. Should the accused, for any reason, not be represented by counsel, the judge advocate shall, from time to time throughout the proceedings, advise him of his legal rights.

Summary court-martial may try cases where the punishment is not more than three months' confinement nor the forfeiture of more than three months' pay.

Special court-martial may try cases where the punishment is not more than six months' confinement nor forfeiture of more than six months' pay.

General court-martial may try any person subject to military law for any crime punishable by the Articles of War.

Maximum and Minimum Punishments

Art. of War	*Confinement at hard labor*	*Forfeiture of pay for*
54	6 months to 1 year	
58	6 months to 5 years	
59	1 year to 4 years	
61	3 days to 6 months	1 day
62	1 year	2 days
63	6 months	4 months
65	2 months to 1 year	1⅓ months
68	6 months to 5 years	4 months
69	1 month to 1 year	⅔ month
73	6 months to 1 year	4 months
83	3 months to 2 years	2 months to 4 months
84	3 months to 5 years	2 months to 4 months
85	6 months	5 days to 6 months
86	6 months or death	
90	3 months	2 months
93	6 months to 20 years	
94	1 to 5 years	
96	1 month to 5 years	10 days to 4 months

CHAPTER XIX

FIRST-AID SUGGESTIONS

Wounds and Cuts

The first-aid packet has been so treated as to be free of germs; therefore in applying the gauze to a cut or wound be careful not to touch the part which is applied to the wound.

In treating a wound, first loosen the clothing. Don't let onlookers crowd around the patient.

Never touch the wound with anything except the first-aid dressing.

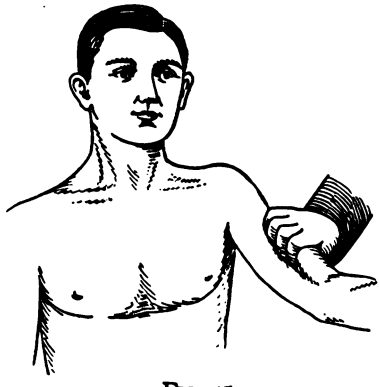


FIG. 45

Never give whiskey or any stimulant unless ordered to do so by a doctor.

Bleeding will stop soon unless an artery or vein has been cut.

If a large artery is cut, the blood will gush out in spurts. In this case find the artery and press it between the cut and the heart.

FIG. 46

If in the arm or hand, apply pressure as in Figure 45. If in the leg, treat as in Figure 46. If in the shoulder or arm-pit, do as in Figure 47.

In the case of an artery in the arm or leg, use a tourniquet, as shown in Figure 48, as follows: Place a pad of cloth or paper over the artery. Tie a bandage loosely about the limb and insert the bayonet or a stick and twist until the bleeding stops. Be careful to twist slowly and stop as soon as bleeding ceases.

FIG. 47

FIG. 48

FIG. 49

Broken Bone

The greatest danger in the case of a broken bone is that the broken ends may tear the arteries, veins, and muscles. Therefore, never move the limb that is broken except to straighten it out gently and pull the end so as to get the bones in place. Then bind the leg or arm to a splint of any straight, stiff material, such as a bayonet, rifle, etc., to hold it in place. Put the bandages above and below the broken part.

FIG. 50

A good plan is to bind the broken leg to the well one and the broken arm to the body.

FIG. 51

Do not fuss with wounds in the body. Simply cover them with the dressing in the first-aid packet.

Fainting or Exhaustion

Symptoms. Pale, skin cool and moist, pulse weak, and unconsciousness.

Treatment. Loosen clothing. Keep body warm, and give stimulant (whiskey, hot coffee, or tea).

Sunstroke

Symptoms. Face flushed, skin dry and very hot, pulse full and strong.

FIG. 52

Treatment. Put the patient in a cool place, remove or open clothing, cool the body by cold water applied to the head and other parts of the body. ***Never give stimulants.***

Freezing and Frostbite

Symptoms. The frozen part will look white or bluish and be cold.

Treatment. Rub briskly but carefully in a cool place, never near a fire. Give small amount of stimulant and then warm liquid food, like soup. The object is to gradually, not violently, bring back the normal circulation of the blood.

Schaefer Method of Restoring the Apparently Drowned

Turn the patient face to the ground, clasp your hands under his waist and raise the body so that any water may drain out of the air passages while the head remains low. The patient is then laid on his stomach, arms extended from his body beyond his head, face turned to one side so that the mouth and nose do not touch the ground. This position causes the tongue to fall forward of its own weight and so prevents its falling back into the air passages. Turning the head to one side prevents the face coming into contact with mud or water during the operation. This position also facilitates the removal from the mouth of foreign bodies, such as tobacco, chewing gum, false teeth, etc., and favors the expulsion of mucus, blood, vomitus, serum, or any liquid that may be in the air passages.

The operator kneels, straddles one or both of the patient's thighs, and faces his head. Locating the lowest rib, the operator, with his thumbs nearly parallel to his fingers, places his hands so that the little finger curls

over the twelfth rib. If the hands are on the pelvic bones the object of the work is defeated; hence the bones of the pelvis are first located in order to avoid them. The hands must be free from the pelvis and resting on the lowest rib. By operating on the bare back it is easier to locate the lower ribs and avoid the pelvis. The nearer the ends of the ribs the hands are placed without sliding off the better. The hands are thus removed from the spine, the fingers being nearly out of sight.

FIG. 53

The fingers help some, but the chief pressure is exerted by the heels (thenar and hypothenar eminences) of the hands, with the weight coming straight from the shoulders. It is a waste of energy to bend the arms at the elbows and shove in from the sides, because the muscles of the back are stronger than the muscles of the arms.

The operator's arms are held straight, and his weight is brought from his shoulders by bringing his body and shoulders forward. This weight is gradually increased until at the end of the three seconds of vertical pressure upon the lower ribs of the patient the force is felt to be

heavy enough to compress the parts; then the weight is suddenly removed. If there is danger of not returning the hands to the right position again, they can remain lightly in place; but it is usually better to remove the hands entirely. If the operator is light and the patient an overweight adult, he can utilize over 80 per cent of his weight by raising his knees from the ground and supporting himself entirely on his toes and the heels of his hands, the latter properly placed on the ends of the floating ribs of the patient. In this manner he can work as effectively as a heavy man.

FIG. 54

A light feather or a piece of absorbent cotton drawn out thin and held near the nose by some one will indicate by its movements whether or not there is a current of air going and coming with each forced expiration and spontaneous inspiration.

The natural rate of breathing is 12 to 15 times per minute. The rate of operation should not exceed this. The lungs must be thoroughly emptied by three seconds of pressure, then refilling takes care of itself. Pressure

and release of pressure—one complete respiration—occupies about five seconds. If the operator is alone, he can be guided in each act by his own deep, regular respiration or by counting or by his watch lying by his side. If comrades are present, he can be advised by them.

The duration of the efforts at artificial respiration should ordinarily exceed an hour; indefinitely longer if there are any evidences of returning animation, by way of breathing, speaking, or movements. There are liable to be evidences of life within 25 minutes in patients who will recover from electric shock, but where there is doubt the patient should be given the benefit of the doubt. In drowning, especially, recoveries are on record after two hours or more of unconsciousness; hence, the Schaefer method, being easy of operation, is more likely to be persisted in.

Aromatic spirits of ammonia may be poured on a handkerchief and held continuously within 3 inches of the face and nose. If other ammonia preparations are used, they should be diluted or held farther away. Try it on your own nose first.

When the operator is a heavy man it is necessary to caution him not to bring force too violently upon the ribs, as one of them might be broken.

Do not attempt to give liquids of any kind to the patient while unconscious. Apply warm blankets and hot-water bottles as soon as they can be obtained.

Hints for Treating Wounded

1. Have the wounded man sit or lie down.
2. Loosen the collar and waist belt and remove equipment.

3. Expose the wound freely to view, and look for bleeding, before attempting to dress it.

4. Always remove clothing by unbuttoning or cutting, and pull nothing off.

5. Do not remove more clothing than is necessary to see the wound clearly.

6. Never touch the wound with the fingers, with water, or with anything except first-aid dressing.

7. Elevate the limb above the level of the body to lessen pain and bleeding.

8. Apply bandage from first-aid packet to protect the wound from infection and blood poisoning.

9. If blood spurts from a wound in a strong stream, measures must be taken to stop it.

10. Have those who are able to walk repair to the dressing station at once.

11. Those who are unable to walk must be made to lie as quietly and comfortably as possible and await the arrival of litter bearers.

CHAPTER XX

EASY ROAD TO FRENCH

Pronunciation

(The French alphabet is the same as the English, except that there is no w.)

Letters *Pronunciation*

A ....(Short) somewhat like *a* in *am;* (long), â, like *a* in *bar.*

B ....Same as in English.

C ....Sound of *k* before *a, o, u* or a consonant; sound of *s* before *e, i* and *y,* and with the cedilla (*ç*).

D ....Same as in English.

E ....As *u* in *sun*—silent at end of words; *ê, è, ei,* nearly like *ei in their; é, ai,* as *a* in *aim.*

F ....As in English.

G ....Like *s* in *pleasure* before *e, i* and *y;* as *g* in *go* before *a, o,* and *u.*

H ....Usually silent.

I ....As *e* in *me.*

J ....As *z* in *azure.*

K ....As in English.

L ....As in English.

M....As in English.

N ....As in English.

O ....*o,* as in *rob; ô, au, eau* as *o* in English.

P ....As in English, but often silent at end of word.

Q ....As *k* in English.
R ....As in English.
S ....As *s* in *sister;* like *s* in *please* when between two vowels.
T ....As in English; sometimes like *s* in *sister;* most always silent at end of words.
U ....Like German *ü*—to form, purse lips, then say *ee.*
V ....As in English.
X ....As in English.
Y ....As *e* in *me.*
Z ....As in English.

Liaison or *linking.* Final consonants are usually silent, but when the next word begins with a vowel the final consonant and the vowel are blended or linked, as: *"C'est un petit garçon";* here the *t* and *u* are blended—that is, *C'est* and *un* are pronounced as one word. In blending, final *s* or *x* = *z; d* = *t; g* = *k; f* = *v,* as *nos amis* (*no-za-me*).

Elision. The vowels *a, e,* and *i* are silent in certain cases. Then they are represented by an apostrophe. Thus, *a* and *e* in *le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ne, que* before initial vowel or *h* mute; also *i* in *si* before *il* or *ils.* Ex.: *L'abri* (*le abri*) = *shelter; j'aime* (*je aime*) = *I love.* *Final e* is silent unless it is the only vowel in the word.

Note.—Many sounds in French have no equivalent in English. The only way to get them is to have the words you are doubtful about pronounced by a Frenchman.

Articles—Definite and Indefinite

Le (masculine) = the, as *le caporal* = the corporal.
La (feminine) = the, as *la compagnie* = the company.
Les (plural, both f. and m.) = the, as *les soldats* = the soldiers.

Un (masculine) = one or a, as *un caporal* = a corporal. *Une* (feminine) = a or one, as *une compagnie* = one company.

Gender. French nouns are either feminine or masculine. There are no case endings in French, therefore the gender is indicated by the article, as *la* or *une femme* = *the* or *a woman; le* or *un papier* = *the* or *a paper.* The direct object is expressed by a verb + noun, as *Le père aime son fils* = the father loves his son. The indirect object by the preposition *á* + noun, as *J'ai donné le fusil au* (*à* + *le*) *caporal Jones* = I gave the rifle to Corporal Jones. The possessive by *de* + noun, as *J'ai le chapeau du* (*de* + *le*) *sergent Smith* = I have Sergeant Smith's hat.

In French, (1) verb and subject agree in number and person; (2) adjective and noun, in gender and number; (3) pronoun and antecedent, in gender and number.

Pronouns

Personal

je = I	nous = we
tu = you	vous = you
il = he; elle = she	ils = they
se = himself, herself, itself	se = themselves

Possessive

Masculine (Singular)	Feminine (Singular)	Plural (Plural)
mon	ma	mes = my
ton	ta	tes = thy, your
son	sa	ses = his, her, its
notre	notre	nos = our
votre	votre	vos = your
leur	leur	leurs = their

De le and de les are always contracted into du and des, as Le pistolet du lieutenant = The lieutenant's pistol; Les

baïonnettes des soldats = The soldiers' bayonets. A le = au; à les = aux.

Plurals

As in English, the plural of a noun or adjective is usually formed by adding s, as: Le brave soldat, Les braves soldats, The brave soldier, The brave soldiers.

Plural of le, la, l' is les; as: Le livre, les livres, The book, the books.

Nouns ending in s, x and z and adjectives in s and x are unchanged in the plural, as: bras = arms, nez = noses. Nouns and adjectives in au and nouns in eu add x, as: couteau = knife, couteaux = knives.

Nouns and adjectives in al, change al to au and add x, as: général, généraux. Special cases: Œil = eye, yeux = eyes; ciel = sky, cieux = skies or heavens.

Questions

To ask a question put the personal pronoun after the verb and join with a hyphen, or by t if the verb ends in a vowel, as: Avez-vous? = have you? a-t-il? = has he? est-elle ici? = is she here?

By putting the words est-ce que, meaning "Is it that?" at the beginning, any sentence may be turned into a question, as: "Est-ce que vous avez mon chapeau?" = "Have you my hat?" Without Est-ce que the sentence would mean "You have my hat." This is the usual way of asking a question.

On is an indefinite pronoun and means one, some one, we, you, they, people, with the verb always in the singular, as: "On parle des troupes françaises avec admiration," may mean "One, people, we, you or they speak of the French troops with admiration."

Qu'est-ce que or que may be used to ask a question, as: Qu-a-t-il? or Qu'est-ce qu'il a? = What has he?

Adjectives

Feminine of adjectives is usually formed by adding e to masculine, as: grand (m.), grande (f.).

Comparison

Put plus = more, moins = less or aussi = as, before the adjective, and que = than or as, after it to form the comparative, as: Il est plus grand que Jean = He is taller than John. Il est moins grand que Jean = He is not so tall as John. Il est aussi grand que Jean = He is as tall as John.

Superlative

Put a definite article or a possessive adjective before plus or moins to form the superlative, as: Marie est la plus belle de toutes = Marie is the most beautiful of them all.

Irregular

Bon = good; meilleur = better; le meilleur = best.

Adverbs

Same as adjectives, but le is always used in superlative.

Irregular

Bien = well; mieux = better; le mieux = best.
Peu = little; moins = less; le moins = least.

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns

moi = I, me	nous = we, us
toi = thou, you	vous = you
lui = he, him	eux = they, them (m.)
elle = she, her	elles = they, them (f.)

These forms are used after prepositions, as: pour elles = for them; avec moi = with me; sans eux = without them; also as subject after ce and être, as:

C'est moi, c'est vous, c'est nous = It is I, it is you, it is us.

LEARN THESE BY HEART

French		English
avec	=	with
et	=	and
où	=	where
sur	=	on or upon
voici	=	here is, here are
voilà	=	there is, there are
il y a	=	there is, there are
aussi	=	too, also
derrière	=	behind
non	=	no
devant	=	before, in front of
autre	=	other
dans	=	in or into
ici	=	here
mais	=	but
oui	=	yes
la	=	her, it
le	=	him, it
aujourd'hui	=	today
bon, bonne	=	good
sous	=	under
là	=	there
en	=	some or any, of it, of him, of her, of them (pronoun)
en	=	in, into, like a, while, on (preposition)
combien de	=	how many
chez moi	=	at home
ensemble	=	together
maintenant	=	now
ou	=	or
à	=	to, at, in
ce, cet, cette	=	this, that (ce before (m.) noun beginning with a consonant; cet, when it begins with a vowel, or h mute; cette, before a (f.) noun.)
que	=	what
que	=	whom, which, that (pron.)
que	=	than, as, let (conj.)
entrer dans	=	to enter, go into

nous voici	=	here we are
en route	=	on the way
pour	=	for, in order to
beau, belle	=	fine, handsome
beaucoup	=	much, very much
blanc, blanche	=	white
bleu, bleue	=	blue
grand, grande	=	great, large, tall
à cheval	=	on horseback
noir, noire	=	black
parce que	=	because
pourquoi	=	why
qui	=	who, whom, which
naturel, naturelle	=	natural
si	=	so
vieux, vielle	=	old
d'abord	=	first
bientôt	=	soon
ensuite	=	then, next
puis	=	then, afterwards
tout, toute	=	all, the whole, every (adj.)
tout	=	quite (adv.)
déjà	=	already
dernier, dernière	=	last
encore	=	yet, again
entre	=	among
gros, grosse	=	big
modeste, modeste	=	modest
peut-être	=	perhaps
toujours	=	still
tout à fait	=	quite
car	=	for
cher, chère	=	dear
quant à	=	as for, as to
être en train de	=	to be in the act of
depuis que	=	since
hier soir	=	yesterday or last evening
partout	=	everywhere
prochain, prochaine	=	next
faire le tour de	=	to go around
fatigué, fatiguée	=	tired
à la fin	=	at last, finally

même	=	same
à bon marché	=	cheap
après	=	after
tout de suite	=	at once
à l'instant	=	instantly
prêt, prête	=	ready
donner la main à	=	to shake hands with
je suis levé	=	I am up
afin que	=	in order that
avant que	=	before
bien que	=	although
un de mes amis	=	a friend of mine
ceci	=	this (thing)
cela	=	that (thing)
dont	=	of whom, of which
de l'eau bénite	=	Holy water
du pain bénit	=	consecrated bread
sans coup férir	=	without striking a blow

Common Phrases

Here is my knapsack = *Voici mon sac.* By substituting any word, such as lamp, for knapsack you have *Voici ma lanterne,* and in this way you can form any number of phrases. Remember that the gender of the pronoun agrees with the noun. You have ***ma lanterne*** because *lanterne* in French is feminine.

Bring me	=	*Apportez-moi*
Some coffee		du café
Some tea		du thé
Some milk		du lait
Some butter		de beurre
Some bread		du pain
Some meat		de la viande
Some stew		du ragoût
Some cheese		du fromage
Some chocolate		du chocolat

Some bacon	du lard
Some soup	du potage
Some eggs	des œufs
Some potatoes	des pommes de terre
A blanket	une couverture
A hammer	un marteau
A hat	un chapeau
A rifle	un fusil

As in the expression *donnez-moi,* you can substitute any words for the word blanket, etc. To be polite you should use *"S'il vous plaît"* after *apportez-moi* or *donnez-moi,* which means "If you please." When the article is given to you, say *"Merci,"* which means "Thanks." There are many other verbs that can be used in this way, as *montrez-moi* = show me, or *dites-moi* = tell me.

Requests, etc.

Can you?.....Pouvez-vous?
I want (something).....J'ai besoin de (quelque chose).
Do you know?.....Savez-vous?
Do you speak English?.....Parlez-vous anglais?
Have you?.....Avez-vous?
Help!.....Au secours!
I am hungry.....J'ai faim.
I am ill.....Je suis malade.
I am thirsty.....J'ai soif.
I am tired.....Je suis fatigué.
I am wounded.....Je suis blessé.
I do not speak French!.....Je ne parle pas français!
I do not understand you!....Je ne vous comprends pas!
Please bring me.....Apportez moi—, s'il vous plaît
—get me.....Procurez-moi.

—give me.....Donnez-moi.
—lend me.....Prêtez-moi.
—pass me.....Passez-moi.
—show me.....Montrez-moi.
—tell me.....Dites-moi.
Speak more slowly.....Parlez plus lentement.
Thank you.....Merci.
Will you?.....Voulez-vous?

Food, Drink, Smoke

Beer, Glass of.....Un verre de bière.
Biscuit.....Le biscuit.
Brandy.....Cognac.
Bread, butter.....Du pain, beurre.
Canteen.....Bidon.
Cheese.....Fromage.
Chocolate.....Chocolat.
Cigarette.....Une cigarette.
Coffee, cream.....Du café, crême.
Drink, To.....A boire.
Eggs.....Œufs.
Food.....De la nourriture.
Fruit.....Des fruits.
Grapes.....Raisins.
Match.....Allumette.
Meal, A.....Un repas.
Meat.....De la viande.
Milk.....Du lait.
Mineral Water.....Eau minérale.
Pipe.....Pipe.
Smoke, A.....Quelque chose à fumer.
Smoke, To.....Fumer.
Soup.....Consommé.

Sugar.....Le sucre.
Tea.....Du thé.
Tobacco.....Du tabac.
Vegetables.....Des legumes.
Water.....De l'eau.
Wine.....Du vin.

Correspondence, Telegraph, etc.

Envelope.....Enveloppe.
Fountain pen.....Plume réservoir.
Ink.....De l'encre.
Note paper.....Papier à lettres.
Pen.....Plume.
Pencil.....Crayon.
Postage stamp.....Timbre.
Postcard.....Carte postale.
Post this letter.....Mettez cette lettre à la poste.
Registered letter.....Une lettre recommandée.
Telephone message.....Un message téléphonique.
Telegram.....Une dépêche.

Dress and Toilet

Bath, A.....Un bain.
Bed.....Lit.
Blankets.....Couvertures.
Bootlaces.....Lacets de bottine.
Boots, shoes.....Les souliers m.
Braces.....Les bretelles, f.
Brush.....La brosse.
Buttons.....Les boutons, m.
Candle.....Bougie.
Cap (cloth.).....La casquette.
Comb.....La flanelle.
Gloves.....Les gants, m.

Handkerchiefs.....Mouchoirs.
Hat.....Le chapeau.
Necktie.....Une cravate.
Needle.....Une aiguille.
Overcoat.....Un pardessus.
Pants (drawers), pair of.....Un caleçon.
Pins.....Les épingles, f.
Pocket.....La poche.
Penknife.....Le canif.
Purse.....Le porte-monnaie.
Razor.....Un rasoir.
Scissors.....Les ciseaux, m.
Sewing-cotton.....Le coton (à coudre).
Sheets.....Draps.
Shirts.....Chemises.
Sleeping-suits.....Vêtements de nuit.
Socks, pairs of.....Paires de chausettes.
Some soap.....Du savon.
Spectacles.....Les lunettes, f.
Stockings, pairs of.....Paires de bas.
Stud.....Un bouton (de chemise).
Suit (of clothes).....L'habit complet.
Thread.....Le fil.
Tooth-brush.....Une brosse à dents.
Towels.....Essuie-mains.
Trousers, pair of.....Un pantalon.
Waistcoat.....Un gilet.
Watch.....Une montre.
Water, hot, cold.....De l'eau chaude, froide.
Waterproof coat.....Un manteau imperméable.

Utensils

Basin (Hand).....La cuvette.
Bucket.....Le seau.

Coffee-pot.....Une cafetière.
Corkscrew.....Un tire-bouchon.
Cup.....Une tasse.
Dish.....Un plat.
Fork.....Une fourchette.
Glass.....Un verre.
Jug of milk.....Un pot au lait.
Kettle.....Une bouilloire.
Knife.....Un couteau.
Plate.....Une assiette.
Spoon.....Une cuiller.
Saucer.....Une soucoupe.
Tea-pot.....Une théière.

Directions and Places

Before.....Avant.
Behind.....Derrière.
Bridge.....Un pont.
Brook.....Un ruisseau.
Church.....Une église.
Field.....Un champ.
Ford.....Le gué.
Forest.....Une forêt.
Hill.....Un col.
Une colline.
In front of.....Devant.
Railway.....Un chemin de fer.
Railway station.....Une gare.
River.....Un fleuve.
Road.....Une route.
Un chemin.
Spring.....Une source.
Street.....

Town.....Une ville.
Valley.....Une vallée.
Village.....Une village.
Wall.....Un mur.
Wood.....Un bois.
North.....Nord.
South.....Sud.
East.....Est.
West.....Ouest.
North-east.....Nord-est.
North-west.....Nord-ouest.
South-east.....Sud-est.
South-west.....Sud-ouest.

On the Road **Sur la Route**

Where is——?—Où est—?
What place is this?—Où sommes-nous ici?
What is the nearest town?—Quelle est la ville la plus proche?
Where does this road lead to?—Où mène cette route?
Where is the nearest inn?—Où est l'auberge le plus près d'ici?
Is it far? Quite near—Est-ce loin? Tout près.
This way. Opposite—Par ici. En face.
Can I have a bed?—Puis-je avoir un lit?
Where are the English?—Où sont les Anglais?
Where are the English troops?—Où sont les troupes anglaises?
Have you seen the aëroplane?—Avez vous vu l'aéroplane?
The airship is waiting—Le dirigeable attend.
Which is the way to——?—Quel chemin faut-il prendre pour aller à—?
We are looking for our regiment—Nous cherchons notre régiment.
We are going to—— —Nous allons à—.
Are there any soldiers here?—Y a-t-il des soldats ici?
Where have the troops gone?—Les troupes où sont-elles allé-

Where can we cross the river?—Où pouvons-nous traverser le fleuve?

Have the troops passed this way?—Est-ce que les troupes ont passé par ici?

Where is the enemy?—Où est l'ennemi?

Over there—Par là.

Here. There—Ici. Là.

How far away?—A quelle distance?

What is this river?—Quel est ce fleuve?

What troops are those?—Quelles sont ces troupes là?

The soldiers are coming this way—Les soldats viennent par ici.

Are we near the railway?—Sommes-nous près du chemin de fer?

Is there a station near?—Y a-t-il une gare près d'ici?

How far is it to a town?—A quelle distance sommes-nous d'une ville?

About five kilometers—Environ cinq kilomètres.

It is ten kilometers to—— ——est à dix kilomètres d'ici.

Follow this road for a kilometer—Suivez cette route pendant un kilomètre.

Turn to the left—Tournez à gauche.

Always keep to the right—Prenez toujours votre droite.

You must go to the east—Il faut aller à l'est.

They went south-east—Ils sont allés au sud-est.

Is there a bridge?—Y a-t-il un pont?

The nearest bridge is at—— —Le pont le plus proche est à—

Three kilometers farther on—Trois kilomètres plus loin.

Are there any boats?—Y a-t-il des bateaux?

Where have you come from?—D'où venez-vous?

Where do you want to go?—Où voulez-vous aller?

At the top of the hill—En haut de la colline.

At the foot of the mountain—Au pied de la montagne.

Keep straight on—Allez tout droit.

valley—Suivez la vallée.

Over that hill—Après cette côte.
To the right, to the left—A droite, à gauche.
Straight on—Tout droit.
Go back, go on—Retournez, continuez.
Along the road—Sur la route.
To the cross-roads—Aux chemins de traverse.
Halt! Who goes there?—Halte! Qui va là?
Friend! I am an Englishman—Ami! Je suis anglais.
I have lost my way—Je me suis perdu.
Who are you?—Qui êtes vous?
Have you a pass?—Avez-vous un permis?
You can't pass this way—Vous ne pouvez pas passer par ici.
You must go back—Il vous faut reculer.
Where are our quarters?—Où sont nos logements?
What is your name?—Comment vous appelez-vous?
My name is—— —Je m'appelle—.
Are you French?—Êtes-vous français?
What is your regiment?—Quel est votre régiment?
I belong to—— —J'appartiens à—.
What is your number?—Quel est votre numéro?
My number is—— —Mon numéro est—.
Can you give me——*?*—Pouvez-vous me donner—?
Some water to drink—De l'eau à boire.
Some food—Quelque chose à manger.
Where can we fill our water-bottles (canteens)?—Où pouvons-nous remplir nos bidons?
Where can we get food?—Où pouvons-nous trouver à manger?
Forage for our horses—A manger pour nos chevaux.
Some water for my horse—De l'eau pour mon cheval.
Where can we water our horses?—Où pouvons-nous faire boire nos chevaux?
I should like a wash—Je voudrais me laver.

ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY[1]

Common Words.

Afternoon (This)	Cet après-midi.
Army (An)	Une armée.
Bandage	Un bandage.
Bath	Un bain.
Bayonet	Une baïonnette.
Bed	Un lit.
Blanket	Une couverture.
Boy	Un garçon.
Bullet	Une balle.
	Un pruneau (soldier slang).
Camp	Un camp.
	Un campement.
Cartridge	Une cartouche.
Child	Un enfant.
	Une enfant.
Cook	Un cuisinier.
	Un cuistot (slang).
	Une couisinière (fem.).
Dance	Un bal.
	Une danse (one dance).
Dark	Obscur.
Day	Un jour.
Dead	Mort.
Deserter	Un déserteur.
Door	Une porte.
Farm	Une ferme.
Firearms	Des armes à feu.
Field gun	Une pièce de campagne.
Flag	Un drapeau.
	Un étendard (standard).

[1] This vocabulary is taken from the "Non-Commissioned Officers' Manual, U. S. Army."

Forest	Une forêt.
	Un bois (woods).
	Un boqueteau (clump of trees).
Friend	Un ami.
	Une amie.
Girl	Une jeune fille.
Guide	Un guide.
Gun	Un fusil.
Halt!	Halte!
Hand	Une main.
Hat	Un chapeau.
	Un képi (cap).
	Un casque (helmet).
	Un feutre (campaign hat).
Head	La tête.
Headquarters	Le quartier général.
Horse	Un cheval.
Interpreter	Un interprète.
Knife	Un couteau.
Lake	Un lac.
Man	Un homme.
Meat	De la viande.
Name	Un nom.
Night	La nuit.
Noon	Midi.
Machine gun	Une mitrailleuse.
Mess call	La soupe.
Password	Le mot de passe.
Pay	Le prêt (enlisted men).
	La solde officers).
Prisoner	Un prisonnier.
Recruit	Une recrue.
	Un bleu (slang).
	Un bleuet (slang).
	Un blanc-bec (slang).

Restaurant....Un restaurant.
Un café.
Road....Un chemin.
Une route.
Retreat....La retraite.
Reveille....Le réveil.
La diane.
Saber....Un sabre.
Saddle....Une selle.
Shelter tent....Une tente-abri.
Shoe....Des chassures (shoes in general).
Des souliers (low shoes).
Des bottines (high shoes).
Des brodequins (marching shoes).
Shotgun....Un fusil de chasse.
Sick....Malade.
Soup....Une soupe.
Un potage.
Spy....Un espion.
Supper....Le souper.
Sword....Une épée.
Tent....Une tente.

Numerals

One....Un, une.
Two....Deux.
Three....Trois.
Four....Quatre.
Five....Cinq (pronounce *sank*).
Six....Six (pronounce *cease*).
Seven....Sept (pronounce *set*).
Eight....Huit (pronounce *weet*).

Nine.....Neuf.
Ten.....Dix (pronounce *deess*).
Eleven.....Onze.
Twelve.....Douze.
Thirteen.....Treize.
Fourteen.....Quatorze.
Fifteen.....Quinze.
Sixteen.....Seize.
Seventeen.....Dix-sept.
Eighteen.....Dix-huit.
Nineteen.....Dix-neuf.
Twenty.....Vingt (pronounce *vant*).
Twenty-one.....Vingt-et-un.
Thirty.....Trente.
Thirty-one.....Trente-et-un.
Thirty-two.....Trente-deux.
Forty.....Quarante.
Fifty.....Cinquante.
Sixty.....Soixante.
Seventy.....Soixante-dix.
Seventy-one.....Soixante-et-onze.
Seventy-two.....Soixante-douze.
Eighty.....Quatre-vingts.
Eighty-one.....Quatre-vingt-un.
Ninety.....Quatre-vingt-dix.
Ninety-one.....Quatre-vingt-onze.
One hundred.....Cent.
One hundred and one.....Cent un.
Two hundred.....Deux cents.
Two hundred and one.....Deux cent un.
One thousand.....Mille.
Two thousand.....Deux mille.
One thousand one hundred....Mille cent; onze cents.
Thousands of soldiers.....Des milliers de so

A million.....Un million.
Two million men.....Deux millions d'hommes.
A score.....Une vingtaine.
About forty men.....Une quarantaine d'hommes.
Hundreds of men.....Des centaines d'hommes.

Currency, Measures, and Weights

1 cent.....Un sou; cinq centimes.
10 cents.....Dix sous; cinquante centimes.
20 cents (about).....Un franc.
1 dollar.....Cinq francs.

(The French have gold pieces of 10 francs and 20 francs; bank notes of 50 francs, 100 francs, and higher. The gold pieces are probably replaced by bank notes now.)

1 meter (1.0936 yards).....Un mètre.
1 kilometer (0.62138 mile).....Un kilomètre.

Note.—For all ordinary purposes, the "kilomètre" = ⅝ of a mile; the "centimètre" = $\frac{1}{10}$ of an inch.

1 league (2.48552 miles).....Une lieue.
1 hectare (2.471 acres).....Un hectare.
1 gram (15.432 grains troy)....Un gramme.
1 kilogram (2.2046 pounds avoirdupois).....Un kilogramme.
220.46 pounds avoirdupois.....Un quintal; 100 kilos.
2,204.6 pounds avoirdupois....Une tonne; 1,000 kilos.

(Coal is sold by the *tonne;* grain and hay by the *quintal.* Dix quintaux de blé, de foin = 10 quintals of grain, of hay.)

1.0567 quart (liquid).....Un litre.
26.417 gallons.....Un hectolitre.
0.908 quart (dry).....Un litre.
2.837 bushels.....Un hectolitre.

(The *litre,* which is the principal unit of both fluid and dry measures, is the contents of 1 cubic *décimètre* [décimètre = $\frac{1}{10}$ of a mètre].)

Days, Months, and Seasons

Sunday	Dimanche.
Monday	Lundi.
Tuesday	Mardi.
Wednesday	Mercredi.
Thursday	Jeudi.
Friday	Vendredi.
Saturday	Samedi.
January	Janvier.
February	Février.
March	Mars.
April	Avril.
May	Mai.
June	Juin.
July	Juillet.
August	Août (pronounce *oo*).
September	Septembre.
October	Octobre.
November	Novembre.
December	Décembre.
The seasons	Les saisons.
Winter	L'hiver.
Spring	Le printemps.
Summer	L'été.
Fall	L'automne.
Year	Un an; une année.
Month	Un mois.
Week	Une semaine.
Day	Un jour.
Hour	Une heure.
Minute	Une minute.
Second	Une seconde.

Familiar Phrases

Good morning (good afternoon), sir, madam, miss	Bonjour, monsieur, madame, mademoiselle.
Good evening, sir	Bonsoir, monsieur.
Good night, sir	Bonne nuit, monsieur.
Pardon me	Pardon; je vous demande pardon.
Don't mention it	Je vous en prie.
How do you do?	Comment allez-vous? Comment ça va? Comment vous portez-vous?
Very well, thank you	Très bien, merci. Je vais bien, merci. Ça va bien, merci. Je me porte bien, merci.
Do not trouble yourself	Ne vous gênez pas. Ne vous dérangez pas.
I am very glad to see you	Je suis bien aise de vous voir. Je suis content (heureux) de vous voir.
What time is it?	Quelle heure est-il?
It is 10 o'clock	Il est dix heures.
Take care; look out	Prenez garde.
Do not bother me	Ne me dérangez pas.
Stop here	Arrêtez-vous ici.
Does Mr. — live here?	M. — demeure-t-il ici?
Come in	Entrez.
You are very kind	Vous êtes très aimable.
At what time does the first train start?	A quelle heure part le premier train?
What is the name of this station?	Comment s'appelle cette station (gare)?
I want	Je désire..Je veux (stronger).
I do [illegible]	Je n'en veux pas.

Let me know what I owe you...	Dites-moi ce que je vous dois.
Are you not mistaken?.....	N'êtes-vous pas dans l'erreur? Ne vous trompez-vous pas?
Please give me.....	Veuillez me donner.
Move on.....	Avancez. Circulez. (Policeman.)
I want something to eat.....	Je désire quelque chose à manger.
Where is it?.....	Où est ce?
Go and look for it.....	Allez le chercher.
Take this letter to the post office	Portez cette lettre à la poste.
How much is it?.....	Combien? Combien cela coûte-t-il?
It is dear.....	C'est cher.
Thank you.....	Merci. Je vous en remercie.
Don't mention it.....	Il n'y a pas de quoi. De rien.
Allow me to present my friend—	Permettez-moi de vous présenter mon ami—.
I am glad to make your acquaintance.	Je suis enchanté de faire votre connaissance.
How far is it?.....	A quelle distance est-ce?
What can I do for you?.....	Que puis-je faire pour vous?
Do you speak English?.....	Parlez-vous anglais?
I do not speak French very well.	Je ne parle pas très bien le français.
Where do you come from?.....	D'où venez-vous?
How did you come?.....	Comment êtes-vous venu?
On foot, in a carriage, in an auto, by rail, by boat, on a bicycle, on horseback, in an aëroplane.	A pied, en voiture, en auto, en chemin de fer, en bateau, à bicyclette, à cheval, en aéroplane.

Military Titles, Ranks, and Grades

General officers.....Les officiers généraux.
General staff.....L'état-major général.
Field officers.....Les officiers supérieurs.
Company officers.....Les officiers subalternes.
Enlisted men.....Les hommes de troupe.
Noncommissioned officers.....Les sous-officiers.
Privates.....Les simples soldats.
Colonel.....Le colonel (addressed as "Mon colonel").
Major.....Le commandant ("Mon commandant").
Captain.....Le capitaine ("Mon capitaine").
Le piston (slang).
First lieutenant.....Le lieutenant (en premier) ("Mon lieutenant").
Second lieutenant.....Le sous-lieutenant ("Mon lieutenant").
A doctor.....Un (médecin) major.
A sergeant.....Un sergent (addressed as "Sergent").
Un maréchal des logis (mounted service).
A corporal.....Un caporal ("Caporal").
Un brigadier (mounted service).
A body of troops.....Une troupe.
French troops.....Des troupes françaises.
A wagoner.....Un conducteur.
Un fourgonnier.
A horseshoer.....Un maréchal-ferrant.
A saddler.....Un sellier.
.....Un signaleur.

A deserter	Un déserteur.
A soldier of Infantry	Un fantassin.
Cavalry	Un cavalier.
Artillery	Un artilleur.
Engineers	Un sapeur-mineur.
Quartermaster Corps	Un homme de l'intendance.
Signal Corps	Un homme du corps des signaux.
Hospital Corps	Un infirmier.
Line of Communications	Un garde des voies et communications, G. V. C.
Infantry	L'infanterie.
Cavalry	La cavalerie.
Artillery	L'artillerie.
Engineers	Le génie.
Signal Corps	Le corps des signaux.
Hospital Corps	Le corps de santé. Le service de santé.
Aviation Corps	Le corps d'aviation.

Military Terms

The headquarters	Le quartier général.
The train	Le train des équipages.
Railway service	Le service des chemins de fer.
Telegraph service	Le service des télégraphes.
Rural guards	La gendarmerie. Des gendarmes.
A paymaster	Un trésorier.
A chaplain	Un aumônier.
An army	Une armée.
General So-and-so's army	L'armée—(l'armée Foch).
An army corps	Un corps d'armée.
A division	Une division.
A brigade	Une brigade.

A regiment	Un régiment.
A battalion	Un bataillon.
A company	Une compagnie.
A platoon	Un peloton.
A section	Une section.
A squad	Une escouade.
A detachment	Un détachement.
Barracks	Une caserne.
A camp	Un camp (more or less permanent). Un campement (temporary).
A cantonment	Un cantonnement.
Line	(Une) ligne.
Column	(Une) colonne.
As skirmishers	En tirailleurs.
Follow me, as skirmishers	A moi, en tirailleurs.
Scouts	Des éclaireurs.
A patrol	Une patrouille.
The advance guard	L'avant-garde.
The rear guard	L'arrière-garde.
Flankers	Des flanc-gardes.
The main body	Le gros (de la colonne).
Combat train	Le train de combat.
Field train	Le train régimentaire.
Outposts	Des avant-postes.
Cossack posts	Des avant-postes à la cosaque.
A sentinel	Une sentinelle. Un factionnaire.
On post	En faction. De faction.
Guard mounting	La garde montante (also *new guard*).
The sentinel challenges: "Halt! Who's there?"	La sentinelle crie: "Halte! Qui vive?"

The answer is: "France?".....La réponse est: "France."
Advance with the countersign..Avance au ralliement.

(The person challenged gives the *mot d'ordre*, which is the name of some general, and the sentinel replies with the *mot de ralliement*, which is the name of a battle or a city).

Go away; you can't pass.....(Passe) au large.
Halt, or I fire.....Halte, ou je fais feu.
Put down your arms.....Déposez vos armes.
Hands up!.....Levez les bras.
Face about.....(Faites) demi-tour.
Come here.....Venez ici.
A spy.....Un espion.
A flag of truce.....Un drapeau blanc.
Un drapeau parlementaire.

Uniform, Arms, Clothing, and Equipment

Clothing.....Les vêtements, l'habillement.
Change your clothes.....Changez de vêtements.
Overcoat (worn by French infantry).....Une capote.
Trousers.....Un pantalon.
Breeches.....Une culotte.
Shirt.....Une chemise.
Blouse.....Un dolman, une vareuse.
Cap.....Un képi.
Campaign hat (United States).Un (chapeau de) feutre.
Helmet.....Un casque (de tranchée).
Cap without visor worn by French off duty.....Un bonnet de police.
Tam-o'-shanter worn by Alpine chasseurs.....Un béret.
Shoes in general.....Des chaussures.
Service shoes.....Des brodequins.
Leggins.....Des guêtres.
Wrap putties.....Des bandes molletières.

Leather putties.....Des houseaux (or housseaux).
Full-dress uniform.....La grande tenue.
Dress uniform.....La petite tenue.
Field uniform.....La tenue de campagne.
Overcoat (mounted men).....Un manteau.
Overcoat (officers).....Un manteau.
Un manteau-capote.
Fatigue coat.....Le bourgeron.
Fatigue trousers (overalls).....Un pantalon de treillis.
Fatigue uniform.....La tenue de corvée.
Magazine rifle.....Un fusil à répétition.
The barrel.....Le canon.
The bolt.....Le verrou.
The ramrod.....La baguette.
The butt.....La crosse.
The gun sling.....La bretelle.
The trigger.....La détente.
Rear sight.....La hausse.
Front sight.....Le guidon.
A bayonet.....Une baïonnette.
Rosalie (slang).
Ball cartridge.....Une cartouche à balle.
Blank cartridge.....Une cartouche à blanc.
Dummy cartridge.....Une fausse cartouche.
Belt.....Un ceinturon.
Cartridge box.....Une cartouchière.
First-aid packet.....Un paquet de pansement.
The pack.....Le sac.
A haversack.....Un étui-musette.
Canteen.....Un bidon.
Tin cup.....Un quart.
Mess can.....Une gamelle.
Equipment.....L'équipement.
Compass.....Une boussole.

Field glasses	Des jumelles (de campagne).
Whistle	Un sifflet.
Revolver	Un revolver.

Questions About the Road, etc.

Pardon me, sir, do you speak English?	Pardon, monsieur, parlez-vous anglais?
(German, French, Italian, Russian.)	(Allemand, français, italien, russe.)
All right, then show me, please, the road to ——	Très bien, alors indiquez-moi, je vous prie, le chemin de ——.
Is it far from here?	Est-ce loin d'ici?
How long does it take to go there?	Combien de temps faut-il pour y aller?
How many kilometers?	Combien de kilomètres?
Is there a short cut (road)?	Y a-t-il un chemin de traverse?
Is there a short cut (trail)?	Y a-t-il un sentier plus court?
Where does this road go?	Où mène cette route?
Are we on the right road to go to ——?	Sommes-nous sur le bon chemin pour aller à ——?
Does this road go through Compiègne?	Cette route passe-t-elle par Compiègne?
Shall we find any villages on our road?	Trouverons-nous des villages sur notre chemin?
Are there any other roads going to ——?	Y a-t-il d'autres chemins pour aller à ——?
Is this road in good condition?	Cette route est-elle en bon état?
Are there hills?	Y a-t-il des côtes (des coteaux)?
Are they steep?	Sont-elles raides?
Does the road go through open or wooded country?	La route traverse-t-elle un pays découvert ou boisé?

Can we get through with artillery?	Peut-on passer avec de l'artillerie?
Can we get through with heavily loaded wagons (auto trucks)?	Peut-on passer avec de grosses voitures chargées (avec de camions-automobiles)?
Is this road practicable for artillery?	Cette route est-elle praticable pour l'artillerie?
Can infantry march on the sides of the roads?	L'infanterie peut-elle marcher sur les côtés de la route?
Is the ground practicable?	Le terrain est-il practicable?
Is the ground marshy?	Le terrain est-il marécageux?
What is the nature of the ground?	Quelle est la nature du sol?
Does the telegraph line follow this road as far as X?	Est-ce que la ligne télégraphique (le télégraphe) suit cette route jusqu'à X?
Where does your railroad come from?	D'où vient votre chemin de fer?
Where does it go to?	Où va-t-il?
Is it single tracked or double tracked the whole way?	Est-il à une voie ou à deux voies sur tout le parcours?
Where is the station? Is it far?	Où est la gare? Est-elle loin d'ici?
How can the river be crossed?	Comment peut-on passer la rivière?
Is there a bridge? a ferry?	Y a-t-il un pont? un bac?
Are there fords?	Y a-t-il des passages à gué (des gués)?
Can we get boats?	Peut-on trouver des bateaux?
In that wood are there clearings, ravines, brooks, marshes, pools?	Dans ce bois, y a-t-il des clairières, des ravins, des ruisseaux, des marais, des mares?

Are there any places near here for watering horses?	Y a-t-il des endroits près d'ici pour abreuver les chevaux?
Is the water good?	L'eau est-elle bonne?
Is this water drinkable?	Est-ce de l'eau potable?
Are there watering troughs?	Y a-t-il des abreuvoirs?
Where is there good grass for the animals?	Où y a-t-il de bonne herbe pour les animaux?
Can we buy provisions?	Peut-on acheter des vivres?
Is there a field where we can camp?	Y a-t-il un champ où nous pouvons camper (installer notre campement)?
Can you give me any information about the enemy?	Pouvez-vous me donner des renseignements sur l'ennemi?
Please find me a guide who knows the country.	Veuillez me trouver un guide qui connaisse le pays.
We are going to follow this trail (tracks).	Nous allons suivre cette piste.
Crossroads.	Un carrefour.

Towns

Where is the postoffice and telegraph office?	Où est le bureau des postes et télégraphes?
The postmaster.	Le directeur des postes et télégraphes.
The mail.	Le courrier.
When was the last mail distributed?	A quelle heure a-t-on fait la derrière distribution?
General delivery.	Poste restante.
Are there any letters for ——?	Y a-t-il des lettres pour ——?
I should like to send a telegram.	Je voudrais expédier un télégramme.
Have you received a telegram for ——?	Avez-vous reçu un télégramme (une dépêche) pour ——?

A telegraph instrument.	Un appareil (télégraphique).
Can you tell me where the mayor's office is?	Pourriez-vous me dire où se trouve la mairie?
I couldn't tell you; I am a stranger here.	Je ne saurais vous renseigner; je ne connais pas la ville.
Good morning, sir, are you the mayor?	Bonjour, Monsieur, êtes-vous le maire?
No, sir, I am his assistant.	Non, Monsieur, je suis son adjoint.
I should like to speak to the mayor himself.	Je voudrais parler au maire lui-même.
Listen, sir. A detachment will arrive here tomorrow morning at five o'clock.	Ecoutez, monsieur. Un détachement arrivera ici demain matin à cinq heures.
Can you arrange to lodge 2,000 men for two days?	Pouvez-vous prendre des dispositions pour loger 2,000 hommes pendant deux jours?
A policeman.	Un sergent de ville, un agent de la paix.

Railroads

The station agent	Le chef de gare.
The conductor	Le conducteur.
The engineer	Le mécanicien.
The fireman	Le chauffeur.
The brakeman	Le serre-freins.
The telegraph operator	Le télégraphiste.
An engine	Une locomotive.
Passenger cars	Des wagons (de voyageurs).
Flat cars	Des trucks.
Box cars	Des wagons de marchandises.
Stock cars	Des wagons à bestiaux.
An express train	Un train express.

A through train	Un train direct.
A local train	Un train omnibus.
A passenger train	Un train de voyageurs.
A freight train	Un train de marchandises.
To entrain the troops	Embarquer les troupes.
To detrain the troops	Débarquer les troupes.
To get on a train	Monter dans un train.
To get off a train	Descendre d'un train.
The railroad track	La voie (ferrée).
A side track	Une voie de garage.
A ticket	Un billet.
A round trip ticket	Un billet d'aller et retour.
One way only	Aller seulement.
The ticket window	Le guichet.
At what time does the Paris train start?	Le train pour Paris, à quelle heure part-il ?
It is late (15 minutes late)	Il est en retard (de quinze minutes).
Do we have to change cars?	Faut-il changer de train?
The train stops	Le train s'arrête.
All aboard!	En voiture!
The train starts	Le train s'ébranle

Rations and Food

Salt	Du sel.
Provisions (in general)	Les vivres.
The ration	La ration.
Fresh beef	De la viande fraîche.
Bacon	Du lard.
Flour	De la farine.
Soft bread	Du pain frais.
Hard bread (crackers)	Du biscuit.
Field bread	Du pain de guerre.
Corn meal	De la farine de maïs.

Coffee.....Du café.
Sugar.....Du sucre.
Eggs.....Des œufs.
Chickens.....Des poulets.
Potatoes.....Des pommes de terre.
Peas.....Des pois.
String beans.....Des haricots verts.
Vegetables (in general).....Des légumes.
An apple.....Une pomme.
A pear.....Une poire.
A cherry.....Une cerise.
A peach.....Une pêche.
Cheese.....Du fromage.
Wine.....Du vin.
Beer.....De la bière.
A glass of beer.....Un bock.
I am hungry.....J'ai faim.
Bring me something to eat, please. — Apportez-moi quelque chose à manger, s'il vous plaît.
I am thirsty.....J'ai soif.
Please give me a glass of water. — Veuillez me donner un verre d'eau.
Waiter, I'll take a beefsteak. — Garçon, je désire un bifteck.
Some black coffee.....Du café noir.
Coffee with milk.....Du café au lait.
Rolls.....Des petits pains.
Crescent rolls.....Des croissants.

Hospitals

A field hospital.....Une ambulance.
A hospital (in general).....Un hôpital (plural: des hôpitaux).
A dressing station.....Un poste de secours.
A first-aid dressing..... Un pansement sommaire.

Red Cross	La Croix Rouge
A doctor	Un médecin.
	Un docteur.
A surgeon	Un chirurgien.
A military surgeon	Un (médecin) major.
Assistant surgeon	Un aide-major.
A male nurse, hospital corps man.	Un infirmier.
A female nurse	Une infirmière.
An ambulance	Une ambulance.
A stretcher (litter)	Un brancard.
A litter bearer	Un brancardier.
A roll of bandages	Un rouleau de bandage.
A first-aid packet	Un paquet de pansement.
A wounded man	Un blessé.
I am sick	Je suis malade.
I have a fever	J'ai la fièvre.
I have chills and fever	J'ai des frissons de fièvre.
I am constipated	Je suis constipé.
I have diarrhea	J'ai la diarrhée.

Points of the Compass

North	Le nord.
South	Le sud.
East	L'est.
West	L'ouest.
Northeast	Le nord-est.
Southeast	Le sud-est.
Northwest	Le nord-ouest.
Southwest	Le sud-ouest.

Trench Warfare

Trench warfare	La guerre des tranchées.
	La guerre de position.
	La guerre de taupe (*moles*).

Trench	Une tranchée.
Communication trench	Un boyau (de communication).
The parapet	Le parapet.
A loophole	Un créneau.
	Une meurtrière.
A grenade	Une grenade.
A grenadier, bomber	Un grenadier.
Barbed wire	Du fil de fer barbelé.
Barbed wire entanglement	Un réseau de fils de fer barbelés.
Trench mortar	Un mortier.
	Un crapouillaud.
	Minnenwerfer (German).
Bomb	Une bombe.
Howitzer	Un obusier.
Machine gun	Une mitrailleuse.
Field-piece	Une pièce de campagne.
75 millimeter field gun	Une pièce de soixante-quinze.
Siege gun	Une pièce de siège.
120 long	Cent vingt long.
120 short	Cent vingt court.
77 (German)	Soixante-dix-sept (allemand).
Shell	Un obus.
	Une marmite (slang).
	Un colis à domicile (slang).
Shrapnel	Un shrapnell.
	Un rageur (slang).
Periscope	Un périscope.
Trench knife	Un couteau de tranchée.
Dugout	Un abri dans les tranchées.
	Un cagibi (slang).
	Une cagna (slang).
	Un gourbi (slang).
	Une

Cammandements	Words of Command (Calls)
Rassemblement!	Fall in!
Garde à vous!	Attention! (Shun!)
Smith, sortez des rangs	Smith, fall out.
Autant (*or* Revenez)	As you were.
Rompez les rangs	Dismissed.
Alignement (à gauche, à droite, alignement)	Right, dress!
Fixe!	Eyes front!
Numérotez-vous (consécutivement)	Count off.
Appuyez à droite	Bear to the right.
En avant!	Forward!
Pas accéléré, marche!	Quick time, march!
Pas gymnastique, marche!	Double time, march!
Suivez!	Close up!
Changez le pas, marche!	Change step!
Pas de route	Route step (smoking, speaking, allowed)
Portez armes	Shoulder arms.
Présentez armes	Present arms.
Inspection du canon du fusil	Inspection arms.
Reposez armes	Order arms.
Baïonnette au canon	Fix bayonets.
Chargez	Charge.
Remettez la baïonnette	Unfix bayonets.
Formez les faisceaux	Stack arms.
Rompez les faisceaux	Take arms.
Par file à droite	Right turn.
Par file à gauche	Left turn.
Demi-tour à droite	Right about.
Volte-face	About face.
Couchez-vous	Lie down.
Approvisionnez	Load your magazine.
Feu	Fire.
Tirez	Fire.
Feu à volonté	Fire at will.
Feu rapide	Rapid fire.
Cessez le feu	Cease firing.
Déchargez	Unload.

Summons to Surrender Aufforderungen zur Übergabe

Surrender!.....Ergebet euch, ergeben Sie sich!
Throw down your rifles!.....Gewehre wegwerfen!
Hands up!.....Hände hoch!
Lie down!.....Hinlegen!
Stand up!.....Auf!
Come on!.....Kommen Sie!
Pass in front!.....Gehen Sie voran!
Halt!.....Stehen bleiben!
Attention!.....Achtung!
Quick march!.....Vorwärts marsch!
Forward!.....Abmarschieren!

CONJUGATION

REGULAR VERBS

Regular verbs are divided into three classes[1] according as the present infinitive ends in **-er, -ir, -re,** and are inflected as follows:

I	II	III
	Infinitive Mood	
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
donn **er**, *to give.*	fin **ir**, *to finish.*	romp **re**, *to break.*
	Participles	
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
donn **ant**, *giving.*	fin **iss ant**, *finishing.*	romp **ant**, *breaking.*
PAST	PAST	PAST
donn **é**, *given.*	fin **i**, *finished.*	romp **u**, *broken.*
	Indicative Mood	
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
I give, am giving, etc.	*I finish, am finishing, etc.*	*I break, am breaking, etc.*
je donn **e.**	je fin **i s.**	je romp **s.**
tu donn **es.**	tu fin **i s.**	tu romp **s.**
il donn **e.**	il fin **i t.**	il romp **t.**[2]
nous donn **ons.**	nous fin **iss ons.**	nous romp **ons.**
vous donn **ez.**	vous fin **iss ez.**	vous romp **ez.**
ils donn **ent.**	ils fin **iss ent.**	ils romp **ent.**

[1] See page 271 for verbs ending in *-oir*, which, in some grammars, form the third conjugation, verbs in *-re* forming the fourth.

[2] All other regular verbs in this conjugation drop the ending, *-t.*

IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT
I was giving, used to give, etc.	*I was finishing, used to finish, etc.*	*I was breaking, used to break, etc.*
je donn **ais.**	je fin **iss ais.**	je romp **ais.**
tu donn **ais.**	tu fin **iss ais.**	tu romp **ais.**
il donn **ait.**	il fin **iss ait.**	il romp **ait.**
nous donn **ions.**	nous fin **iss ions.**	nous romp **ions.**
vous donn **iez.**	vous fin **iss iez.**	vous romp **iez.**
ils donn **aient.**	ils fin **iss aient.**	ils romp **aient.**

PAST DEFINITE	PAST DEFINITE	PAST DEFINITE
I gave, etc.	*I finished, etc.*	*I broke, etc.*
je donn **ai.**	je fin **is.**	je romp **is.**
tu donn **as.**	tu fin **is.**	tu romp **is.**
il donn **a.**	il fin **it.**	il romp **it.**
nous donn **âmes.**	nous fin **îmes.**	nous romp **îmes.**
vous donn **âtes.**	vous fin **îtes.**	vous romp **îtes.**
ils donn **èrent.**	ils fin **irent.**	ils romp **irent.**

FUTURE	FUTURE	FUTURE
I shall give, etc.	*I shall finish, etc.*	*I shall break, etc.*
je donner **ai.**	je finir **ai.**	je rompr **ai.**
tu donner **as.**	tu finir **as.**	tu rompr **as.**
il donner **a.**	il finir **a.**	il rompr **a.**
nous donner **ons.**	nous finir **ons.**	nous rompr **ons.**
vous donner **ez.**	vous finir **ez.**	vous rompr **ez.**
ils donner **ont.**	ils finir **ont.**	ils rompr **ont.**

CONDITIONAL	CONDITIONAL	CONDITIONAL
I should give, etc.	*I should finish, etc.*	*I should break, etc.*
je donner **ais.**	je finir **ais.**	je rompr **ais.**
tu donner **ais.**	tu finir **ais.**	tu rompr **ais.**
il donner **ait.**	il finir **ait.**	il rompr **ait.**
nous donner **ions.**	nous finir **ions.**	nous rompr **ions.**
vous donner **iez.**	vous finir **iez.**	vous rompr **iez.**
ils donner **aient.**	ils finir **aient.**	ils rompr **aient.**

Imperative Mood

PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
Give, etc.	*Finish, etc.*	*Break, etc.*
donn **e.**[1]	fin **is.**	romp **s.**
(qu'il donn **e.**)	(qu'il fin **iss e.**)	(qu'il romp **e.**)
donn **ons.**	fin **iss ons.**	romp **ons.**
donn **ez.**	fin **iss ez.**	romp **ez.**
(qu'ils donn **ent.**)	(qu'ils fin **iss ent.**)	(qu'ils romp **ent.**)

[1] This form becomes 'donn **es**' when followed by **-y** or **-en.**

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
(That) I (may) give, etc.	*(That) I (may) finish, etc.*	*(That) I (may) break, etc.*
(que) je donn**e.**	(que) je fin **iss e.**	(que) je romp **e.**
(que) tu donn **es.**	(que) tu fin **iss es.**	(que) tu romp **es.**
(qu') il donn **e.**	(qu') il fin **iss e.**	(qu') il romp **e.**
(que) nous donn **ions.**	(que) nous fin **iss ions.**	(que) nous romp **ions.**
(que) vous donn **iez.**	(que) vous fin **iss iez.**	(que) vous romp **iez.**
(qu') ils donn **ent.**	(qu') ils fin **iss ent.**	(qu') ils romp **ent**
IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT
(That) I (might) give, etc.	*(That) I (might) finish, etc.*	*(That) I (might) break, etc.*
(que) je donn **asse.**	(que) je fin **isse.**	(que) je romp **isse.**
(que) tu donn **asses.**	(que) tu fin **isses.**	(que) tu romp **isses.**
(qu') il donn **ât.**	(qu') il fin **ît.**	(qu') il romp **ît.**
(que) nous donn **assions.**	(que) nous fin **issions.**	(que) nous romp **issions.**
(que) vous donn **assiez.**	(que) vous fin **issiez.**	(que) vous romp **issiez.**
(qu') ils donn **assent.**	(qu') ils fin **issent.**	(qu') ils romp **issent.**

AUXILIARY VERBS

The two auxiliary verbs **avoir**, 'to have,' and **être**, 'to be,' are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows:

Infinitive

PRES. avoir, *to have.* PRES. être, *to be.*

Participles

Pres. ayant, *having.* **Pres.** étant, *being.*
Past. eu, *had.* **Past.** été, *been.*

Indicative

PRESENT		PRESENT	
I have, am having, etc.		*I am, am being, etc.*	
j'ai.	nous avons.	je suis.	nous sommes.
tu as.	vous avez.	tu es.	vous êtes.
il a.	ils ont.	il est.	ils sont.
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
I had, was having, etc.		*I was, was being, etc.*	
j'avais.	nous avions.	j'étais.	nous étions.
tu avais.	vous aviez.	tu étais.	vous étiez.
il avait.	ils avaient.	il était.	ils étaient.

Past Definite		Past Definite	
I had, etc.		*I was, etc.*	
j'eus.	nous eûmes.	je fus.	nous fûmes.
tu eus.	vous eûtes.	tu fus.	vous fûtes.
il eut.	ils eurent.	il fut.	ils furent.
Future		**Future**	
I shall have, etc.		*I shall be, etc.*	
j'aurai.	nous aurons.	je serai.	nous serons.
tu auras.	vous aurez.	tu seras.	vous serez.
il aura.	ils auront.	il sera.	ils seront.
Conditional		**Conditional**	
I should have, etc.		*I should be, etc.*	
j'aurais.	nous aurions.	je serais.	nous serions.
tu aurais.	vous auriez.	tu serais.	vous seriez.
il aurait.	ils auraient.	il serait.	ils seraient.

Imperative

Present		Present	
Have, etc.		*Be, etc.*	
	ayons.		soyons.
aie.	ayez.	sois.	soyez.
(qu'il ait.)	(qu'ils aient.)	(qu'il soit.)	(qu'ils soient.)

Subjunctive

Present		Present	
(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have, etc.*		(*That*) *I* (*may*) *be, etc.*	
(que) j'aie.	(que) nous ayons.	(que) je sois.	(que) nous soyons.
(que) tu aies.	(que) vous ayez.	(que) tu sois.	(que) vous soyez.
(qu') il ait.	(qu') ils aient.	(qu') il soit.	(qu') ils soient.
Imperfect		**Imperfect**	
(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have, etc.*		(*That*) *I* (*might*) *be, etc.*	
(que) j'eusse.	(que) nous eussions.	(que) je fusse.	(que) nous fussions.
(que) tu eusses.	(que) vous eussiez.	(que) tu fusses.	(que) vous fussiez.
(qu') il eût.	(qu') ils eussent.	(qu') il fût.	(qu') ils fussent.

COMPOUND TENSES

Compound tenses are formed from the past participle of the principal verb by using an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir,** sometimes **être**).

Avoir		Être
	Infinitive	
Perfect		Perfect
To have given.		*To have arrived.*
avoir donné.		être arrivé(e)(s).

Participle

PERFECT	PERFECT
Having given.	*Having arrived.*
ayant donné.	étant arrivé(e)(s).

Indicative

PAST INDEFINITE	PAST INDEFINITE
I have given, etc.	*I have arrived, etc.*
j'ai donné.	je suis arrivé(e).
tu as donné.	tu es arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
I had given, etc.	*I had arrived, etc.*
j'avais donné.	j'étais arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
PAST ANTERIOR	PAST ANTERIOR
I had given, etc.	*I had arrived, etc.*
j'eus donné.	je fus arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
FUTURE ANTERIOR	FUTURE ANTERIOR
I shall have given, etc.	*I shall have arrived, etc.*
j'aurai donné.	je serai arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR	CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR
I should have given, etc.	*I should have arrived, etc.*
j'aurais donné.	je serais arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.

Subjunctive

PERFECT	PERFECT
(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have given, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have arrived, etc.*
(que) j'aie donné.	que je sois arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have given, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have arrived, etc.*
(que) j'eusse donné.	(que) je fusse arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.

FORMATION OF TENSES

(Very Important)

Principal Parts.—The various tenses of all regular verbs and of most irregular verbs are formed from five forms of the verb, called primary tenses:

The *Infinitive* gives the *Future* by adding **-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont,** and the *Conditional* by adding **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**—dropping the final infinitive **-e** of the third conjugation for both tenses.

The *Present Participle* gives the *Imperfect Indicative* by changing **-ant** into **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient,** and the *Present Subjunctive* by changing **-ant** into **-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.**

The *Past Participle* gives the *Compound Tenses,* with the auxiliary **avoir** or **être,** and the *Passive,* with the auxiliary **être.**

The *Present Indicative* gives the *Imperative* by dropping the pronoun subject of the second singular and first and second plural, the **-s** of the first conjugation second singular also being dropped, except before **y** and **en.**

The *Past Definite* gives the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by changing the final letter of the first singular (**-i** or **-s**) into **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent,** and putting a circumflex accent over the last vowel of the third singular.

IMPORTANT IRREGULAR VERBS

Aller, 'to go'

Infinitive **aller**; *fut.* irai, iras, ira, etc.; *condl.* irais, etc.

Pres. Part. **allant**; *impf. indic.* allais, etc.; *pres. subj.* aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.

Past Part. **allé**; *past indef.* je suis allé, etc.

Pres. Indic. **vais,** vas, va, allons, allez, vont; *impve.* va, allons, allez.

Past Def. **allai,** allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; *impf. subj.* allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.

Venir, 'to come'

Infinitive. **venir;** *fut.* viendrai, viendras, etc.; *condl.* viendrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **venant;** *impf. indic.* venais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent.

Past Part. **venu;** *past indef.* je suis venu, etc.

Pres. Indic. **viens,** viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent; *impve.* viens, venons, venez.

Past Def. **vins,** vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent; *impf. subj.* vinsse, vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Connaître, 'to know,' etc.

Infinitive. **connaître;** *fut.* connaîtrai, etc.; *condl.* connaîtrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **connaissant;** *impf. indic.* connaissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* connaisse, connaisses, connaisse, connaissions, connaissiez, connaissent.

Past Part. **connu;** j'ai connu, etc.

Pres. Indic. **connais,** connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent; *impve.* connais, connaissons, connaissez.

Past Def. **connus,** connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent; *impf. subj.* connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent.

Dire, 'to say,' 'tell'

Infinitive. **dire;** *fut.* dirai, etc.; *condl.* dirais, etc.

Pres. Part. **disant;** *impf. indic.* disais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

Past Part. **dit;** *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

Pres. Indic. **dis,** dis, dit, disons, dites, disent; *impve.* dis, disons, dites.

Past Def. **dis**, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like **dire**:

contredire, *contradict.*	médire (de), *slander.*	prédire, *predict.*
dédire, *retract, deny.*		redire, *say again.*

The 2d plur. pres. indic. and impve. is: Contredisez, dédisez, etc.

Faire, 'to do' 'make'

Infinitive. **faire**; *fut.* ferai, etc.; *condl.* ferais, etc.

Pres. Part. **faisant**; *impf. indic.* faisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.

Past Part. **fait**; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.

Pres. Indic. **fais**, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font; *impve.* fais, faisons, faites.

Past Def. **fis**, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Mettre, 'to place,' 'put'

Infinitive. **mettre**; *fut.* mettrai, etc.; *condl.* mettrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **mettant**; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc.; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.

Past Part. **mis**; *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.

Pres. Indic. **mets**, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent; *impve.* mets, mettons, mettez.

Past Def. **mis**, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent.

Like **mettre**:

se mettre, *begin.*	démettre, *dismiss.*	promettre, *promise.*
admettre, *admit.*	émettre, *emit.*	remettre, *put back, hand to.*
commettre, *commit.*	s'entremettre, *interpose.*	repromettre, *promise again.*
compromettre, *compromise.*	omettre, *omit.*	soumettre, *submit.*
	permettre, *permit.*	transmettre, *transmit.*

Prendre, 'to take'

Infinitive. **prendre**; *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **prenant**; *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.

Past Part. **pris**; *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.

Pres. Indic. **prends,** prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent; *impve.* prends, prenons, prenez.

Past Def. **pris,** pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Suivre, 'to follow'

Infinitive. **suivre**; *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **suivant**; *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.

Past Part. **suivi**; *past indef.* j'ai suivi, etc.

Pres. Indic. **suis,** suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent; *impve.* suis, suivons, suivez.

Past Def. **suivis,** suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent; *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Irregular Verbs in -oir

Verbs in **-oir**, which are all irregular, form, in some grammars, a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in **-re** being the fourth.

Recevoir, 'to receive'

Infinitive. **recevoir**; *fut.* recevrai, etc.; *condl.* recevrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **recevant**; *impf. indic.* recevais, etc.; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.

Past Part. **reçu**; *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.

Pres. Indic. **reçois,** reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.

Past Def. **reçus,** reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Devoir, 'to owe'

Infinitive. **devoir**; *fut.* devrai, etc.; *condl.* devrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **devant**; *impf. indic.* devais, etc.; *pres. subj.* doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.

Past Part. **dû** (f. due, pl. du(e)s); *past indef.* j'ai dû, etc.

Pres. Indic. **dois**, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; *impve.* ——.

Past Def. **dus**, dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; *impf. subj.* dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.

NOTE—Devoir follows the recevoir model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Pouvoir, 'to be able,' etc.

Infinitive. **pouvoir**; *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **pouvant**; *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent.

Past Part. **pu**; *past indef.* j'ai pu.

Pres. Indic. **puis** *or* **peux**, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impve.* ——.

Past Def. **pus**, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Savoir, 'to know,' etc.

Infinitive. **savoir**; *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.

Pres. Part. **sachant**; *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.

Past Part. **su**; *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.

Pres. Indic. **sais** [se], sais, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impve.* sache, sachons, sachez.

Past Def. **sus**, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

Voir, 'to see'

Infinitive. **voir**; *fut.* verrai, etc.; *condl.* verrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **voyant**; *impf. indic.* voyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.

Past Part. **vu**; *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.

Pres. Indic. **vois**, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient; *impve.* vois, voyons, voyez.

Past Def. **vis**, vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Vouloir, 'to will,' etc.

Infinitive. **vouloir**; *fut.* voudrai, etc.; *condl.* voudrais, etc.

Pres. Part. **voulant**; *impf. indic.* voulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

Past Part. **voulu**; *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.

Pres. Indic. **veux**, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent; *impve.* veux, voulons, voulez.

Past Def. **voulus**, voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

veuillez = 'have the kindness to' usually serves as second plural imperative.

APPENDIX

Definitions

Alignment: A straight line upon which several elements are formed, or are to be formed; or the dressing of several elements upon a straight line.

Base: The element on which a movement is regulated.

Battle sight: The position of the rear sight when the leaf is laid down.

Center: The middle point or element of a command.

Column: A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

Cores in file: To file oneself directly behind the man in front.

Deploy: To extend the front. In general to change from column to line, or from close order to extend order.

Depth: The space from head to rear of any formation, including the leading and rear elements. The depth of a man is assumed to be 12 inches.

Distance: Space between elements in the direction of depth. Distance is measured from the back of the man in front to the breast of the man in rear. The distance between ranks is 40 inches in both line and column. To judge this distance, remember that it is three inches less than the length of your rifle.

Echelon: A formation in which the subdivisions are placed behind one another, extending beyond and unmasking one another either wholly or in part, as

——— A Co.
——— B Co.
——— C Co.
——— D Co.

Element: A file, squad, platoon, company, or larger body, forming part of a still larger body.

File: Two men, the front-rank man and the corresponding man of the rear rank. The front-rank man is the *file leader*. A file which has no rear-rank man is a *blank file*. The term *file* applies also to a single man in a single-rank formation.

File closers: Such officers and noncommissioned officers of a company as are posted in rear of the line. For convenience, all men posted in the line of file closers.

Flank: The right or left of a command in line or in column; also the element on the right or left of the line.

Formation: Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all fractions in their order in line, in column, or for battle.

Front: The space, in width, occupied by an element, either in line or in column. The front of a man is assumed to be 22 inches. Front also denotes the direction of the enemy.

Guide: An officer, noncommissioned officer, or private upon whom the command or elements thereof regulate its march.

Head: The leading element of a column.

Interval: Space between elements of the same line. The interval between men in ranks is 4 inches and is measured from elbow to elbow. Between companies, squads, etc., it is measured from the left elbow of the left man or guide of the group on the right, to the right elbow of the right man or guide of the group on the left.

Left: The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

Line: A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

Order, close: The formation in which the units, in double rank, are arranged in line or in column with normal intervals and distances.

Order, extended: The formation in which the units are separated by intervals greater than in close order.

Pace: Thirty inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

Parole: A promise given on one's faith and honor not to do or to do a certain thing.

Patrol: A body of men sent out to reconnoitre or to guard against surprise.

Platoon: Not less than two squads nor more than four.

Point of rest: The point at which a formation begins. Specifically, the point toward which units are aligned in successive movements.

Rank: A line of men placed side by side.

Right: The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

A safe guard: A detachment of soldiers posted or detached by a commander of troops for the purpose of protecting some person or persons or a particular village, building, or other property.

Forcing a safe guard: To break past a safe guard.

Squad: A corporal and seven privates.

Slang in the Army

"Doughboy"—The infantryman.
"Holy Joe"—The chaplain.
"French leave"—(A. W. O. L.) Absent without leave.

"Rookie"—A new recruit.
"Top"—Top sergeant. First sergeant.
"Q. M."—Quartermaster.
"Come and get it"—Mess is ready.
"K. O."—The commanding officer.
"Sand rat"—The man on duty in the rifle pit at target practice.
"On the carpet" or "High jump"—Being brought before the commanding officer for some offense.
"Bunkie"—The soldier who shares the shelter tent with you. (Bunkies always look after each other's property when either is absent.)
"Canned Willie"—Canned corned beef.
"Papoose"—The carry pack.
"O. D."—Olive drab.
"Canary"—A mosquito.
"Jarheads" or "hardtails"—Army mules.
"Gold fish"—Salmon.
"Pup" tent—Shelter tent.

FORM OF A MILITARY LETTER

Station.....

Date.....

From: SERGEANT JOHN MARSH

To: The Adjutant-General of the Army
(Through Military Channels).

Subject: Request for transfer.

1. The undersigned hereby applies for a transfer from The Signal Corps to the Aviation Section, Signal Corps.

JOHN MARSH.

FORM FOR LAST WILL AND TESTAMENT

Last Will and Testament
of

.....

I, ...
of .....
do make, publish, and declare this my last will and testament.

I give, devise, and bequeath to[1].....

[1] Here insert specific legacies and devises.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

And I do give, devise, and bequeath all the rest and residue of my estate, both real and personal, to.....
.....
.....
.....
heirs and assigns forever,[2].....

[2] If the residue of the estate is given to several persons, add here the manner in which it is to be divided, as "in equal shares as tenants in common."

.....
.....

I hereby appoint.....

.....

..... *executor*

of this my last will and testament, and I desire that..... *shall not be required to give bond for the performance of the said duties of that office.*

Witness my hand this[3].....

[3] If the will is made in Nevada, or if the testator has real estate in that State, he should affix his seal.

day of....., 191

.....

Signed, published, and declared by.....

.....

the above-named testator, as and for his last will and testament, in the presence of us, who, at his request and in his presence, and in the presence of each other, have subscribed our names as witnesses thereto.[4]

[4] If the will is made in Louisiana, unless it is wholly in the handwriting of the testator, there should be seven witnesses and a notary at the "sealing up." If wholly in his handwriting no formalities are required.

.....

Residence:.....

.....

Residence:.....

.....

Residence:.....

INFANTRY DIVISION

Make-up Under War Conditions

Each Infantry Division will now comprise:

Organization	Number of Men
One division headquarters	164
One machine gun battalion of four companies	768
Two infantry brigades, each composed of two infantry regiments and one machine gun battalion of three companies	16,420
One field artillery brigade, composed of three field artillery regiments, and one trench mortar battery	5,068
One field signal battalion	262
One regiment of engineers	1,666
One train headquarters and military police	337
One ammunition train	962
One supply train	472
One engineer train	84
One sanitary train, composed of four field hospital companies and four ambulance companies	949
Total	27,152

Under the new plans an infantry regiment comprising 103 officers and 3,652 men, will be made up as follows:

Organization	Number of Men
One headquarters and headquarters company	303
Three battalions of four rifle companies each	3,078
One supply company	140
One machine gun company	178
One medical detachment	56
Total	3,755

Each rifle company has a strength of 250 men and 6 officers: 1 captain, 2 first lieutenants, and 3 second lieutenants. It *is composed* of a company headquarters and 4 platoons.

The machine gun company has 6 officers and 172 men. It consists of the headquarters and 3 platoons. Its armament is 12 machine guns of heavy type and 4 spare guns.

MILITARY BADGES OR SERVICE RIBBONS

The little strips of parti-colored ribbon worn by soldiers on their left breasts, each of a prescribed length of one and three-eighth inches, are Army service ribbons, each ribbon having its own particular significance. The strips are symbols standing for medals and campaign badges which the bearer is entitled to wear. There are ten of these honors recognized by the Army. Two are medals of honor, one a certificate of merit, and the other badges of campaigns. It would be impractical for the possessor to wear medals and badges on his service uniform and so he wears the little ribbon symbol instead. The ribbons are as follows:

CONGRESSIONAL MEDAL OF HONOR—White stars on a field of light blue silk. This medal is awarded only by Congress for some particular deed of gallantry in action.

CERTIFICATE OF MERIT BADGE—Two red, white and blue bands separated by a thin band of white, the blue being outermost. This honor is conferred by the President.

PHILIPPINES CONGRESSIONAL MEDAL—Blue band in center flanked by stripes of white, red, white and blue, the blue on the outermost edges of the ribbon. This ribbon is worn by those men who stayed in the service after the close of the Spanish-American War to put down the Philippine insurrection.

CIVIL WAR—Campaign ribbon of equal sized bands of blue and gray.

INDIAN WARS—Bright red, with narrow edges of deeper red.

SPANISH CAMPAIGN—Alternating stripes of yellow and blue.

PHILIPPINE CAMPAIGN—Blue band in center, flanked by narrower bands of red, blue edges.

CUBAN OCCUPATION (time of Spanish War and several years thereafter)—Blue in center, flanked by narrow stripes, then broader red stripes, and finally blue borders.

CUBAN PACIFICATION (indicating service in Cuba from 1906–1909, when the United States straightened out governmental affairs for the new Republic)—Broad olive-drab cen-

ter, flanked by three narrow stripes of red, white and blue, the red on the outermost edges.

CHINA CAMPAIGN (indicating service in the march to Peking)—Broad band of yellow with narrow borders of blue.

Ribbons for gallantry in action are worn farthest to the left, followed by campaign ribbons in chronological order.

MILITARY MAIL

The proper manner of addressing mail to soldiers in the Regular Army, National Guard, and the National Army, is as follows:

REGULAR ARMY:
Private John Smith,
Company A, 22nd Infantry,
Camp Jay, Governor's Island,
New York.

NATIONAL GUARD:
Private John Smith,
Company B, 165th Infantry (69th N. Y.),
Camp Mills, Mineola,
New York.

NATIONAL ARMY:
Private John Smith,
Company C, 310th Infantry (N. J.),
Camp Dix, Wrightstown,
New Jersey.

NOTE—The designation of regiments of the National Guard will show in parenthesis their present State designations, as, for example, "Co. B, 165th Infantry (69th N. Y.)."

The designation of regiments of the National Army will show in parenthesis the State from which each organization, or the bulk of it, was drawn, as, for example, "Co. C, 310th Infantry (N. J.)."

The War Department has adopted the following system of numbering the regiments: REGULAR ARMY, 1 to 100; NATIONAL GUARD, 101 to 300; NATIONAL ARMY, 301 up.

The attention of correspondents is directed to the importance *of addressing* mail in the manner described and of having each

letter and parcel bear the address of the sender. Insured, C. O. D., and registered letters or parcels which are not properly addressed and do not bear a return address of sender will not be accepted for mailing.

Postal employees will assist relatives and friends in preparing and properly addressing mail for soldiers. Unless addressed to COMPANY and REGIMENT, mail will be delayed and probably returned to writer as undeliverable.

CANTONMENTS AND MOBILIZATION CAMPS

The following is a list of National Army Cantonments and National Guard mobilization camps, showing the official designation of the camp, the name of the post office to which the military branch handling the mail for the camp is attached, the line of railroad, the R. R. station, and the States from which the troops will be sent.

National Guard Camps

Name of Camp and Address	Nearest City	Railroad	R. R. Station	States
Camp Mills, Mineola, L. I., N. Y.	New York	L. I.	Country Life Press	Rainbow Division (several States)
Camp Greene, N. C.	Charlotte, N.C.	Southern	Camp Greene, N. C.	Maine New Hampshire Vermont Massachusetts Rhode Island Connecticut
Camp Wadsworth, Calvert, S. C.	Spartanburg, S. C.	Southern, Piedmont & Northern	Calvert, S. C.	New York
Camp Hancock, Wheless, Ga.	Augusta, Ga.	Georgia R. R.	Wheless, Ga.	Pennsylvania
Camp McClellan, Ala.	Anniston, Ala.	Southern	Camp McClellan, Ala.	New Jersey Virginia Maryland Delaware Dist. of Columbia
Camp Sevier, Ala.	Greenville, S. C.	Southern, P. & N. Elec.	Paris, S. C.	Tennessee North Carolina South Carolina
Camp Wheeler, Paris, S. C.	Macon, Ga.	Macon, Dublin & Sav.	Camp Wheeler, Ga. (M.D.& S.)	Georgia Alabama Florida
Camp MacArthur, Ga.	Waco, Tex.	St. L. & S. W.	Camp MacArthur, Tex.	Michigan Wisconsin
Camp Logan, Tex.	Houston, Tex.	M. K. & T., S. P.	Camp Logan, Tex.	Illinois
Camp Cody, Tex.	Deming, N. Mex.	S. P., A. T. & S. F.	Camp Cody, N. Mex.	Minnesota Iowa Nebraska North Dakota South Dakota
Camp Doniphan, N. Mex.	Lawton, Okla.	C. R. I. & P., FriscoLines	Camp Doniphan, Ft. Sill, Okla.	Missouri Kansas
Camp Bowie, Ft. Sill, Okla.	Fort Worth, Tex.	Tex. & Pac., FriscoLines	Camp Bowie, Tex.	Texas Oklahoma
Camp Sheridan, Tex., Vandiver Park, Ala.	Montgomery, Ala.	S. A. L., W. R. of Ala., C. of Ga.	Camp Sheridan, Vandiver Park, Ala.	Ohio West Virginia
Camp Shelby, Ala.	Hattiesburg, Miss.	Miss. Cent.	Camp Shelby, Miss.	Indiana Kentucky
Camp Beauregard, Miss.	Alexandria, La.	Tioga & Southern (Log road)	Camp Beauregard, La.	Louisiana Mississippi Arkansas
Camp Kearney, La.	San Diego, Cal.	A. T. & S. F.	Camp Kearney, Cal.	California Nevada Utah Colorado Arizona New Mexico Washington Oregon
Camp Fremont, Cal.	San Francisco, Cal.		Menlo Park, Cal.	Montana Idaho Wyoming

National Army Cantonments

Name of Camp and P. O. Address	Nearest City	Railroad	States
Camp Devens, Mass.	Fitchburg, Mass.	B. & M.	Maine New Hampshire Vermont Massachusetts Rhode Island Connecticut
Camp Upton, L. I., New York	Brooklyn, N. Y.	L. I.	Metropolitan portion of New York, N. Y.
Camp Dix, Wrightstown, N. J.	Trenton, N. J.	Penna. R. R.	New York State Northern Pennsylvania Southern Pennsylvania
Camp Meade, Md.	Baltimore, Md.	Penna., B. & O., W. B. & A.	Maryland District of Columbia New Jersey
Camp Lee, Va.	Petersburg, Va.	N. & W.	Virginia Delaware
Camp Jackson, S. C.	Columbia, S. C.	S. & L., A. C. L., Southern	Tennessee North Carolina South Carolina Georgia
Camp Gordon, Chamblee, Ga.	Atlanta, Ga.	Southern	Alabama Florida
Camp Sherman, Ohio	Chillicothe, Ohio	B. & O.	Ohio West Virginia
Camp Taylor, Dumesnil, Ky.	Louisville, Ky.	Southern	Indiana Kentucky
Camp Custer, Mich.	Battle Creek, Mich.	Mich. Cent., G. T.	Michigan Wisconsin
Camp Grant, Ill.	Rockford, Ill.	C. B. & Q.	Illinois
Camp Pike, Ark.	Little Rock, Ark.	Mo. Pac.	Arkansas Louisiana Mississippi
Camp Dodge, Ia.	Des Moines, Ia.	Steam Train over Electric from Des Moines	Minnesota Iowa Nebraska North Dakota South Dakota
Camp Funston, Ft. Riley, Kan.	Junction City, Kan.	U. P.	Kansas Missouri Colorado
Camp Travis, San Antonio, Tex.	San Antonio, Tex.	M. K. & T., G. H. & San A.	Texas Arizona New Mexico Oklahoma
Camp Lewis, American Lake, Wash.	Tacoma, Wash.	N. P.	Washington Oregon California Nevada Utah Idaho Montana Wyoming

ARMY INSIGNIA

In the U. S. Army there are certain insignia or ornaments by which you can tell the rank and branch of the service to which a man belongs.

The following are some of the insignia you should know:

1 Infantry.

2 Cavalry.

3 Field Artillery.

4 Coast Artillery.

5 Engineer Corps.

6 Signal Corps.

7 Aviation Section of Signal Corps.

8 Ordnance Department.

9 Quartermaster's Corps.

10 Medical Corps.

11 U. S. Shield (Officers' Garrison Caps).

12 Dental Corps.

13 Veterinary Corps.

14 General Staff.

15 Adjutant General's Department

16 Inspector General's Department

17 Judge Advocate General's Department.

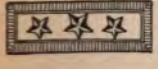
18 Philippine Scouts.

19 Recruiting Service.

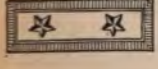
20 Service School Detachments.

21 U. S. Disciplinary Barracks.

22 General (silver star).



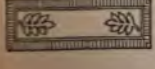
23 Lieutenant General (silver star).



24 Major General (silver star).

25 Brigadier General (silver star).

26 Colonel (silver eagle).

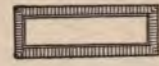


27 Lieutenant Colonel (silver leaves)

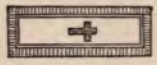
28 Major (gold leaves).

29 Captain (silver bars).

30 First Lieutenant (silver bar).



31 Second Lieutenant.



32 Chaplain.

33 Nurse.

34 Regimental Sergeant Major.

35 Regimental Supply Sergeant.

36 Battalion and Squadron Sergeant Major.

37 Color Sergeant.

38 First Sergeant.

39 Supply Sergeant.

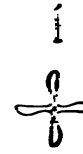
40 Stable Sergeant.

41 Sergeant.

42 Corporal.

43 Lance Corporal.

44 Enlisted Aviator.



45 For all enlisted men, except aviation mechanics and enlisted aviators.

46 Aviation Mechanicians.

47 Junior Military Aviator.

48 Military Aviator.

49 Regular U. S. Officer.

50 U. S. Reserve Officer.

51 U. S. National Guard Officer.

Hat Cords

All Officers wear on the service hat a gold and black hat cord with gold acorns. On the garrison cap, all officers wear a bronze national seal.

INFANTRY—Hat cord for enlisted men is light blue.

Emblem: Crossed rifles.

CAVALRY—Hat cord for enlisted men is yellow.

Emblem: Crossed swords.

ARTILLERY—Hat cord for enlisted men is red.

Emblem: Crossed cannon.

SIGNAL CORPS—Hat cord for enlisted men is a combination of orange piped with white.

Emblem: Crossed signal flags.

ENGINEERS—Hat cord for enlisted men is red piped with white.

Emblem: Double turreted castle.

MEDICAL CORPS—Hat cord for enlisted men is maroon piped with white.

Emblem: A caduceus.

ORDNANCE CORPS—Hat cord for enlisted men is black and red.

Emblem: A bomb with a flare of flame.

QUARTERMASTER'S CORPS—Hat cord for enlisted men is a salmon shade of buff.

Emblem: A wheel surmounted by an eagle with crossed key and sword.

NOTE—To know an officer, look at his hat cord. If this is gold and black he is an officer. If he wears a cap, the national seal shows that he is an officer. While officers wear leather puttees, enlisted men in many branches, as the cavalry and signal corps, also wear leather puttees. All officers wear a brown braid on the sleeves of the blouse.

The Overcoat of an officer does not have a cuff. A Second-Lieutenant wears no braid on the overcoat sleeve; a first Lieutenant wears one knot of black braid; a Captain two knots of black braid; a Major three knots of black braid, and so on, adding one knot for each higher grade.

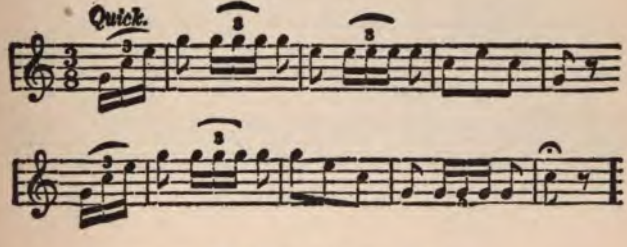
'E WORLD SERIES" - - - BY JIM NASIUM

t opened in Bleeding Belgium, with the Kaiser at the bat.
He won the game at Liege and thought he had the series pat.
Then Johnny Bull went in to pitch, and stopped the foe's advance,
While a feature of the game became the fielding work of France.
Russia went in to pinch-hit, along the Eastern Front,
While Italy and Rumania each laid down a perfect bunt.
They trimmed old Bill at Vimy Hill—with woe they filled his cup;
While out along the foul line Uncle Sam is warming up.

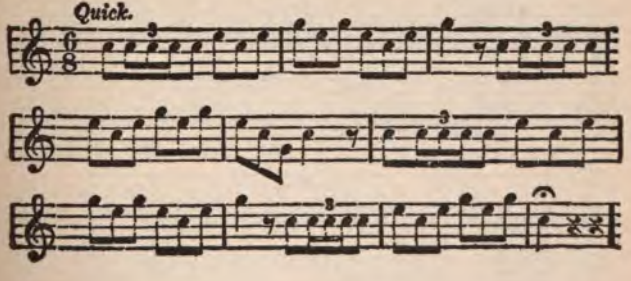
Your Uncle Sam is warming up to mount the pitching hill
And show such speed and curves that he will strike out Kaiser Bill.
That war machine to conquer worlds will know the very worst
When we hit one down to Hindenberg and beat his throw to first,
When Sims goes up to bat and sweeps the subs from off the sea,
And Pershing, sliding into third, spikes the Crown Prince on the knee.
Yes, Uncle Sam is warming up, and after he goes in
We'll be building baseball diamonds in the city of Berlin.

BUGLE CALLS

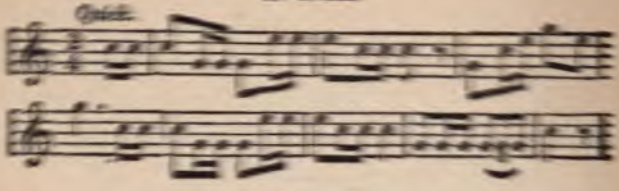
1. FIRST CALL.



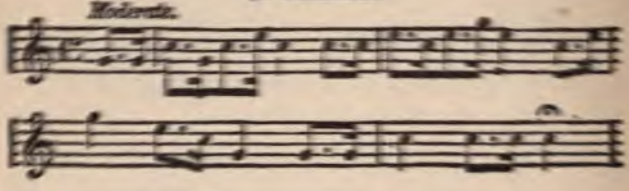
2. GUARD MOUNTING.



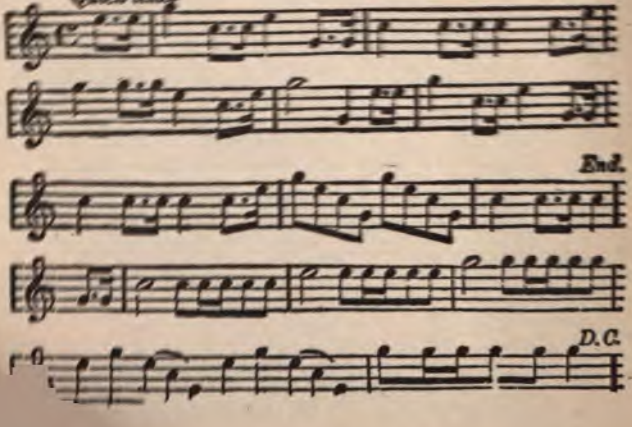
9. DRILL.



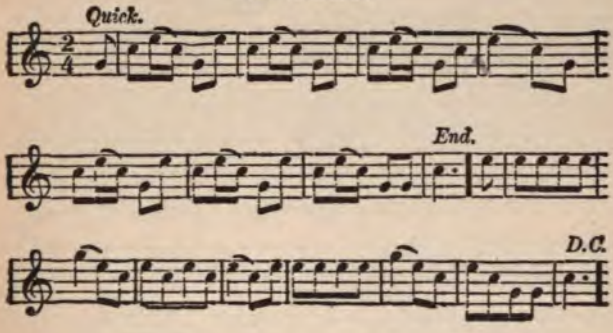
9. ASSEMBLY.



11. TO THE COLOR.



15. REVEILLE.



16. RETREAT.

RETREAT—*Concluded.*

BUGLE CALLS.

17. TATTOO.

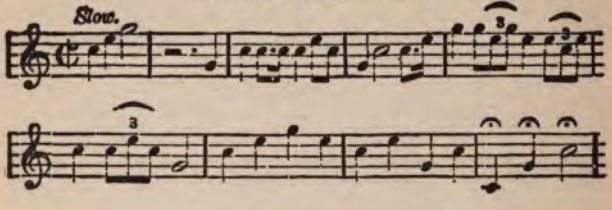
BUGLE CALLS.

TATTOO—*Continued.*

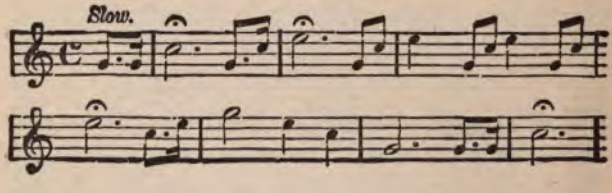
TATTOO—*Concluded.*

BUGLE CALLS.

18. CALL TO QUARTERS.

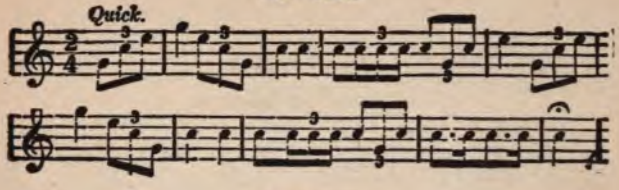


19. TAPS.

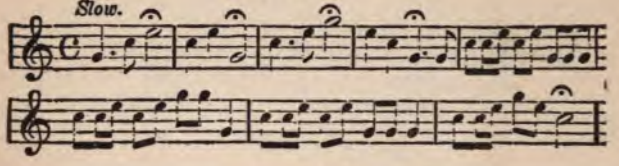


20. MESS.

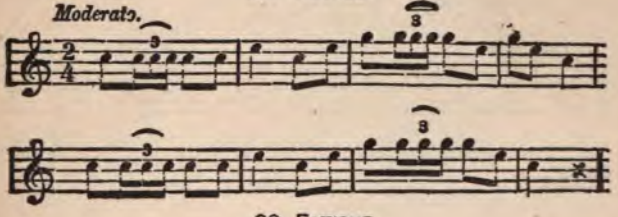
21. SICK.



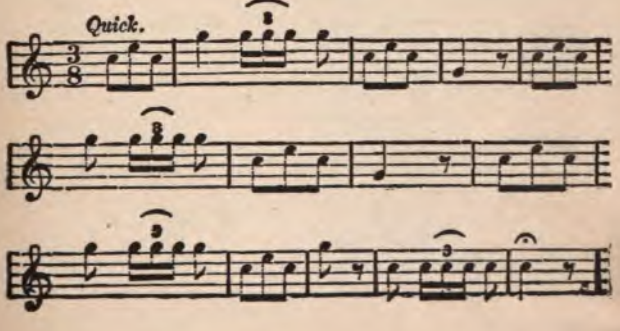
22. CHURCH.



23. RECALL.



28. FATIGUE.



INDEX

About face, 25
Absent without leave, 198
Advance, the, 85
  by succession of thin lines, 89
Advice to riflemen, 178
Advising or aiding another to desert, 198
Aiming, 172
Alertness, 2
Alignments, 40, 67
Ambition, 3
Arm signals, 122
Arms, manual of, 29
  inspection, 29, 37
  left shoulder, 34
  present, 32, 34
  port, 32, 34
  order, 31, 32, 35
  right shoulder, 29, 33, 34
  stack, 44
  trail, 35
  take, 45
Army insignia, 286-288
Arrest or confinement of accused persons, 200
Arrest of deserter by civil authorities, 212
Articles of War, 194
As you were, 16
Assaulting or willfully disobeying a superior officer, 199
Assembly, 52, 85, 89
At ease, 78, 79
Attention, position of the soldier at, 23

Back step, 27
Badges or service ribbons, military, 281
Battle sight, 173
Bayonet, charge, 37
  fix, 36
  unfix, 36
Broken bone, 218
Bugle calls, 291

Calling the shot, 177
Camps, mobilization, list of, 283, 284
Cantonment life, simple rules for, 6
Cantonments, list of, 283, 285
Captain, 67
Captured property, 204
Cease firing, 128
Change step, march, 28
Cheerfulness, 2
Classes of firing, 95
Cleanliness, 2
Cleanliness in camp, 193
Clip fire, 58
Close order, 65
Clothing, care of, 184
Cock fight, 11
Code, semaphore, 131-132

Color, the, 110
manual of the, 112
to receive the, 112
Color guard, 110
Column right, 73
Command, 19, 21
preparatory, 21
of execution, 121
Company, acting alone, 93
to dismiss the, 67
to form the, 66
inspection, 100
right, 68, 69, 70
size of, 280
school of the, 61, 62
in support, 92
Comradeship, 2
Conduct unbecoming an officer and gentleman, 210
Conical wall tent, 118
Coördination, 178
Corporal, to follow the, 50
Countersigns, 155
Count off, 40, 61
Courage, 1
Courtesy, military, 3
Court-martial, 214
Cover, the use of, 59
Cuts and wounds, 216

Dealing in captured or abandoned property, 204
Definitions, 274
Delivery of offender to civil authorities, 202
Deploy, squad as skirmishers, 89
Deployment, 82
rules for (company), 81
Desertion, 198
Detachment, 64
Determination, 1
Disciplining, powers of commanding officer, 210
Disrespect toward superior officer, 199
Disrespect toward President, etc., 199
Distance, to take, 44
Division, infantry, 280
Double time, 26
Dress, right, 40
Drill, infantry, 12
Drills and formations, general rules for, 14
Drowned, restoring the apparently, 220
Drunk on duty, 206
Dueling, 207

Enlistment, without discharge, 196
fraudulent, 196
Entertaining a deserter, 198
Equipment, care of, 184
cloth, 186
Exercises, arm, 9
body, 10
leg, 10
setting-up, 9
Exhaustion, 219
Extended order, 81
Eyes, right, front, etc., 24

Face, about, 25
to, in marching, 24
Facings, 24
Fainting, 219
False returns, 197
File closers, 65
Fire, 93

Fire, at will, 57
by clip, 58
Fire attack, 90
Fire control, 97
Fire direction, 96
Fire discipline, 98
Firing, to suspend, 58
to cease, 58
classes of, 95
Firing position, 175
Firings and loadings, 53
First-aid suggestions, 216
First sergeant, 66
Flag signals, conventional, 130
Flank, to march by the, 28
Forcing a safeguard, 204
Formations and drills, general rules for, 14
Fixed pivot, to turn on, 68
Frauds against the government, 208
Fraudulent enlistment, 196
Freezing, 220
French, easy road to, 225
adjectives, 229
adverbs, 229
arms, 252
articles, 226
auxiliary rules, 265
clothing, 252
commandements, 262
common phrases, 232
common words, 241
compound tenses, 266
conjugation, 263
correspondence, 235
currency, 244
days, 246
directions, 237
disjunctive personal pronouns, 229
dress, 235
drink, 234
equipment, 252
familiar phrases, 247
food, 234, 258
formation of tenses, 268
hospitals, 259
important irregular rules, 268
"learn these by heart," 230
measures, 234
military, grades, 249
ranks, 249
terms, 250
titles, 249
months, 246
numerals, 243
"on the road," 238
places, 237
plurals, 228
points of the compass, 260
pronouns, 227
pronunciation, 225
questions, 228
about the road, 254
railroads, 257
rations, 258
requests, 233
seasons, 246
smoke, 234
telegraph, 235
toilet, 235
towns, 256
trench warfare, 260
uniform, 252
utensils, 236
weights, 234
Front into line, 76
Frost bite, 220

General articles, 210

General orders, for sentinels, 210
German (summons to surrender in), 263
Good order to be maintained and wrongs redressed, 206, 207
Guard, sergeant of, 133
corporal of, 137
privates of, 144
Guard duty, interior, 133
Guard mounting, 158
formal, 158
informal, 164
Guarding prisoners, 157
Guide, 16
right, 41
Guides, company, 65
platoons, 65

Half step, the, 27
Halt, to, 28
Hand, position of, in dressing, 40
salute with the, 25
Hat cords, 289
Health, a few hints on, 190
of the soldier, 190
Hike, when on a, 7
Honors and salutes, 106

Improper use of countersign, 204
Infantry drill, 12
division, 280
Initiative, 2
Injuries to persons or property, redress of, 211
In place halt, 15
Insignia, army, 286-288
Inspection, arms, 29, 37
company, 100
Inspections and muster, 100
Insubordinate conduct toward noncommissioned officer, 199
Interior guard duty, 133
Interval, to take, 41
Intervals, to increase or diminish, 52
Intimidation of persons bringing provisions, 206
Investigation of and action on charges, 201

Junior officer salutes first, 106

Kaiser, ten "Be's" that will beat the, 8
Kneel, to, 52

Last will and testament, form of, 278
Left face, 24
Left shoulder arms, 34
Letter, form of a military, 277
Lieutenants, 61, 67
Lie down, to, 52
Load, to, 54
Loadings and firings, 53
Loyalty, 3

Mail, military, how to address, 282
Manual of arms, 29
execution of, 31
rules governing the, 30
March, when on a, 7
Mark time, to, 27
Marksmanship, preliminary training in, 169

Maximum and minimum punishments, 215
Mess kit, care of, 186
Military courtesy, 3
Military law, persons subject to, 195
Military letter, form of, 277
Military property, willful or negligent loss, damage or wrongful disposition of, 205
Misbehavior, before the enemy, 203
of sentinel, 206
Moving pivot, to turn on, 46, 73
Musicians, 161, 165, 166
Muster, company, 104
Muster rolls—false muster, 196
Murder, 207
Mutiny or sedition, 200
failure to suppress, 200

Noncommissioned officer commanding, position of, 133

Oath of enlistment, 213
Obedience, 1
Oblique, march, 46
right, 46
Observation, 60
Officer, definition of, 194
making unlawful enlistment, 196
On right into line, 75, 76
Order, close, 65
Order arms standing, position of, 31, 32
Orders, 20
general, for sentinels, 145
special, for sentinels, 153

Pack, closed, 103
open, 103
Parade rest, without arms, with arms, 34
Paroles and countersigns, 155
Personal interest in sale of provisions, 206
Persons subject to military law, 195
Platoon columns, 86, 87
Platoons, 63
right, 69, 70, 71, 72
columns right, 74
Pointers for care of rifle, 189
Poncho, to make sleeping bag of, 116
Port arms, 32, 34
Position of the soldier, 23
Present arms, 32, 34
Provoking speeches or gestures, 207
Punishment, 214
maximum and minimum, 215
Pyramidal tent, method of folding, 119

Quick time, 26
Quarrels, frays, disorders, 200

Ranges, close, etc., 94
Rape, 207
Rear, to march to the, 28
Recruits, helpful hints for, 4

Refusal to receive prisoners, 202.
Releasing prisoners without proper authority, 202
Relieving the old guard, 165
Relieving, corresponding with or aiding the enemy, 205
Report of prisoners received, 202
Rests, the, 23
Resume march, 16
Rifle, care of, 184
parts of, 187, 188
Rifle salute, 35
Rifle or piece, rules governing the carrying of, 32
Right, give way to the, 16
Right by file, 79
Right by twos, 79, 80
Right dress, 40
Right face, 24
Right front into line, 76, 77
Right half face, 24
Right oblique, 46
Right shoulder arms, 29, 33, 34
Right turn, 46, 47, 73
Rise, if kneeling or lying down, 53
Route step, 78
Rush, by platoon, etc., 90

Salute, with hand, 25
with rifle, 35
Sanitation and cleanliness in camp, 193
Schaefer method, 220
School of the company, 61, 62
School of the soldier, 22
School of the squad, 38
Selling military property, 205
Semaphore code, 131-132
Sentinels, orders for, 144, 145
Sergeant, first, 66
Setting-up exercises, 9
Shelter tents, 114
to strike, 116
Shoes, care of, 185
Side step, 27
Sight, adjustment, 169
corrections, table of, 171
to set the, 56
Signals, arm, 122
conventional flag, 130
Signals and codes, 129
Signals and signaling, 122
Skirmishers, squad to deploy, 51
company as, 82
company to deploy from column of squads, 83, 84
to deploy as, from platoon or squad columns, 89
Slang in the army, 276
Sleeping bag, to make out of poncho, 116
double, 116
single, 116
Small-arms firing, course in, 181
Soldier, definition of, 194
characteristics of a good, 1
health of, 190
position of, 23
school of the, 22
Soldiers, to make good time lost, 212
separated from the service, 213
Spies, 205

Squad,
columns, 87, 88
consists of, 38
to deploy as skirmishers, 89
to dismiss the, 37
to form the, 40
halt, 28
right, 48, 49
right about, 50, 74
school of the, 38
Squads right, 72, 73
column right, 74
platoons, column right, 74
Stack arms, 44
Step, back, 27
change, 28
length of, 25
side, 27
the half, 27
Steps and marchings, 25
Strike tents, to, 118
Subordinates compelling commander to surrender, 204
Sunstroke, 219
Suspend firing, 58

Take arms, 45
Take interval, 41
Target, the, 95
Target practice, 169
Targets, 181, 182, 183
Team work, 3
Tent pitching, 114
Tents, common, wall, pyramidal, and conical wall, to strike, 118
to fold, 119
pitch, 117
to strike, 118
Thin lines, to advance by, 89
Time, quick, 26
To the rear, march, 28
Trail arms, 35
Trigger squeeze, 174
Turn, right, 46
on the fixed pivot, 16
on the moving pivot, 16

Unload, to, 56

Various crimes, 208
Venereal diseases, 192
Volley, to fire by, 56

War offenses, 203
Waste or unlawful disposition of military property, 205
Will, form of, 278
Wounded, hints for treating, 223
Wounds and cuts, 216

DEC 20 1917

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
3 9015 06295 5375
355
U
113
.K48
Kilner
The cantonment
manual
316934